

H. Groussot sculp.

C. Gignoux Sculp.

61 B 66

A

61 B 66

New General COLLECTION of



VOYAGES and TRAVELS:

CONSISTING

Of the most Esteemed RELATIONS, which have been
hitherto published in any LANGUAGE :

Comprehending every Thing remarkable in its Kind, in

EUROPE, ASIA, AFRICA, and AMERICA,

With respect to the

Several EMPIRES, KINGDOMS, and PROVINCES; their SITUATION, EXTENT, BOUNDS
and DIVISION, CLIMATE, SOIL and PRODUCE; their LAKES, RIVERS, MOUNTAINS,
CITIES, principal TOWNS, HARBOURS, BUILDINGS, &c. and the gradual Alterations that
from Time to Time have happened in each:

ALSO THE

M A N N E R S and C U S T O M S

OF THE

Several INHABITANTS; their RELIGION and GOVERNMENT, ARTS and SCIENCES,
TRADES and MANUFACTURES:

So as to form

A Compleat SYSTEM of MODERN GEOGRAPHY and
HISTORY, exhibiting the Present STATE of all NATIONS;

Illustrated not only with

CHARTS of the several Divisions of the Ocean, and MAPS of each Country, entirely new
Composed, as well as new Engraved, by the best Hands, from the latest Surveys, Discoveries, and Astrono-
mical Observations: But likewise with Variety of Plans, and Prospects of Coasts, Harbours, and Cities; be-
sides CUTS representing Antiquities, Animals, Vegetables, the Persons and Habits of the People, and
other Curiosities: Selected from the most Authentic Travellers, Foreign as well as English.

Published by his MAJESTY's Authority.

V O L. I.

L O N D O N:

Printed for THOMAS ASTLEY. M.DCC.XLV.



By the LORDS JUSTICES.

HARDWICKE, C. | ARGYLL,
GRAFTON, | TWEEDDALE.

To all to whom these Presents shall come, Greeting,

WHEREAS THOMAS ASTLEY, of the City of London, Bookseller, hath humbly represented unto Us, That he hath been at a very great Expence and Charge in purchasing several new *English* Manuscripts of Voyages and Travels, and in Translating divers other Books of Voyages and Travels, out of several Languages, into *English*, and in Engraving Maps and other Plates for the same, intending to Print a New General Collection of the said

VOYAGES and TRAVELS,

In several Volumes in Quarto, Improved with CHARTS of the several Divisions of the Ocean, and entire new MAPS of each Country; also select CUTS, representing Cities, Antiquities, Animals, Vegetables, the Habits of the People, and other Things remarkable in their Kind; with new Discourses and Observations thereupon; which Work may be of great Advantage, as well to Trade as Navigation; and he having humbly besought Us to grant to him, the said Thomas Astley,

His MAJESTY's Royal Privilege and Licence,

For the sole Printing and Publishing the same for the Term of fourteen Years; we being inclined to encourage

An UNDERTAKING of such Publick Use and Benefit,

Are pleased to condescend to his Request, and do by these Presents, in his MAJESTY's Name, (as far as may be agreeable to the Statute in that Case made and provided) grant unto the said Thomas Astley, his Heirs, Executors, Administrators, and Assigns,

HIS MAJESTY's ROYAL PRIVILEGE and LICENCE,

For the sole Printing, Publishing, and Vending the said Work, during the Term of Fourteen Years, to be computed from the Day of the Date hereof, strictly forbidding and prohibiting all his Majesty's Subjects, within his Kingdoms and Dominions, to Re-print or Abridge the same, or any Part of them, either in the like, or any other Volume or Volumes whatsoever; or to Copy or Counterfeit the Sculptures or Maps thereof, either in Great or in Small, during the said Term; or to Import, Buy, Vend, Utter, or Distribute, any Copies of the same, or any Part thereof, Re-printed beyond the Seas, within the said Term, without the Consent of the said Thomas Astley, his Heirs, Executors, Administrators, or Assigns, by Writing under his or their Hands and Seals, first had and obtained, as they will answer the Contrary at their Peril; whereof the Commissioners and other Officers of His Majesty's Customs, the Master, Wardens, and Company of Stationers are to take Notice, that due Obedience be rendered to this His Majesty's Pleasure herein declared.

Given at Whitehall, the 18th Day of October, 1743, in the Seventeenth Year of his Majesty's Reign,

By their Excellencies Command,

E. WESTON.

T O

THE HONOURABLE

EDWARD VERNON, *Esq*;

VICE-ADMIRAL *of the* RED,
And MEMBER of PARLIAMENT for IPSWICH,

This VOLUME of

VOYAGES and TRAVELS,

As well out of
Public Gratitude for his late Eminent Services done the
Nation against the *Spaniards* in *America*, as for his
early Encouragement given this Work, is

Humbly Dedicated by

The COLLECTOR.

T H E

P R E F A C E

TH E first Volume of our Collection being now compleated, it may be expected, that something should be said concerning the Design and Manner of executing it.

IT would be needless to expatiate on the Advantages of Works of this Kind. <sup>Use of Col-
lection.</sup> Every body knows that their Use is to preserve valuable Books from being lost; to render scarce Books common; and to bring the best Authors relating to all Parts of the World into one Body. This has produced so many large Collections of Voyages and Travels in various Languages; as Grinæus and de Bry in Latin, Ramusio in Italian, and Thevenot in French; not to mention several other smaller Collections in the same Languages. But no Nation hath published so many Books of this Sort as our own: For we have already no fewer than three large general Collections in English; Hakluyt in three Volumes Folio, Purchas in four, (exclusive of his Pilgrimage) and Harris in two.

AS to Churchill's, though consisting of six great Folios, it is no more than an Assemblage ^{Churchill's} of the Travels of about fifty particular Authors to a few Parts of the World, and therefore ^{conjur'd.} we do not place it among the general Collections. Besides this essential Defect, the Authors made use of are, for the most Part, of very little Esteem. They seem to have been gathered without Judgment or Care; and chosen (if there was any Choice made at all) rather for their Imperfections than Merit. Some are swelled with scarce any Thing but the Transactions, and even the Disputes, of Missionaries: Others, though very bulky, consist of Matters foreign to the Subject, as Monson's naval Traëts, which take-up the greater Part of the third Volume, and have no more Business in a Collection of Travels than any other naval History extant: So that the Substance, in effect, of the whole six Volumes might easily be comprized in two.

WHAT is still worse, the foreign Authors are very badly translated; and those employed <sup>Bad Trans-
lation.</sup> for that Purpose have been religiously scrupulous to retain all Superfluities both in the Matter and Stile; though they have frequently made bold to mistake their Authors Sense most egregiously, and sometimes to castrate them greatly to their Disadvantage. The Part best executed in the Whole, though very dry, is the Introduction; which some People, without the least Grounds, would fain persuade the Public was written by the great Mr. Locke: But the manifold Imperfections of this Collection sufficiently confute that Pretence.

NOTWITHSTANDING there are so many Collections of Voyages already extant, yet <sup>New Collec-
tions are con-
tinually</sup> as Materials for this Purpose are continually encreasing, and new Discoveries daily made, there will always be the same Necessity from Time to Time of publishing new Collections, or, at least, Additions to the old. This occasioned Hakluyt to set forth his second Edition, with great Improvements, in 1599, ten Years after his first; Purchas to exhibit a new Work in 1625, and Harris to do the like in 1705.

I I E

The Defects
of Purchas,

THE Design of these several Collectors, was to publish, in one Body, all the best Authors from the Revival of Commerce, and Discoveries, about the thirteenth Age, to their own Times: But, to avoid swelling their Work to too great a Bulk, they were obliged to omit many of the most valuable. Hakluyt for this Reason confined himself mostly to the English Travellers. But although he wrote within fifty Years of the first Navigations of this Nation, and added two thick Volumes in his second Edition, yet he was forced to leave-out a great Number of curious Traacts, which afterwards were published by Purchas. This Collector proposed to join many foreign Authors to the English; and as he enlarged his Plan, so he augmented his Volumes in Bulk and Number: Yet still he found himself greatly stinted for Room; insomuch, that to bring those he had provided within the Compass of his four Volumes of Pilgrims, he was under a Necessity of curtailing his Authors in such a Manner as to retrench several of their most essential Parts, and consequently to render his Work in great Measure useless.

And of
Harris,

THE Compilers of that which goes under the Name of Dr. Harris (for he only wrote the Dedication and Introduction) undertook, at fourscore Years Distance, in which Time Books of Voyages and Travels were considerably multiplied, to execute the same Design in much the same Compass as Purchas had done: Or rather to give us the Shadow of a general Collection, and the Skeletons of Authors, instead of the Substance; which, in effect, is the Case: For they have not only omitted a great Number of the most valuable Relations to be found in Hakluyt and Purchas, which do Honour to our Nation, as well as many of those published since they wrote, but have quite spoiled the rest by bad Abridgments: Those which Purchas had published entire, are by them miserably curtailed; and the Authors, which that Collector had mangled before, (that is, all he abridged) are mangled over again.

BESIDES the above-mentioned Imperfections, under which this last Collection labours, it being near forty Years since it was published, a great Number of curious Voyages and Travels have appeared, which want to be collected.

Plan of this
Work

FOR these Reasons the Author of the present Undertaking judged a new general Collection to be necessary, which he proposed to execute according to the following Plan:

FIRST, To insert the Relations from Hakluyt and Purchas omitted in Harris's Collection, as well as those taken from them. Secondly, To restore all the Authors castrated in Harris, as well as those maimed by Purchas, so far as he hath been able to come at the Originals. Thirdly, To take-in not only some English Travellers omitted by Purchas, but also several others published since Purchas, and omitted in Harris. Fourthly, To add the Travellers of any Note, which have appeared in our Language since 1705, when Dr. Harris's Collection was published. Fifthly, To enrich this Collection with a considerable Number of foreign Itineraries, which were never made English before.

Executed in
this Volume.

IT would be Time enough perhaps, when the whole Work was finished, to shew that he had performed his Engagements; and yet the Collector is of Opinion, that this Volume affords abundant Proof, that he has fulfilled his Proposal.

WITH respect to the first Article, he refers to the Voyages of Stephens and Raymond to East India, Windham, Lok, &c. to Guinea. He conceives, that the second is already made-good by every Author inserted from Hakluyt and Purchas; for they are all carefully abridged without omitting any material Circumstance, or adding Fancies of his own, which alter the Sense, as has been done by the Compilers of Harris's Collection: That the third Condition is executed in Part by the Voyages of Captain Covert to the East Indies, those of Windham, Vennor, &c. to Guinea, omitted by Purchas: That the Journies up the Pike of Teneriffe, and the Voyages of Captain Roberts to the Cape de Verde Islands, make-good the fourth Condition; and that the fifth is performed by the Voyages of Soleyman Bassa, Cada Mosto, Pedro de Sintra, and several other Translations.

Materials,
sources.

THE better to succeed in this last Article, we have been careful to procure the best Authors to be met with; and to search not only the great foreign Collections already mentioned for such curious Traacts as have not yet been translated from them, but also the smaller: Such as those

The P R E F A C E.

vii

those of the Dutch to the North and the East Indies, the *Lettres Edifiantes*, *Memoires des Missions*, and several other foreign, literary Journals: Not forgetting the *Memoirs* of the Academy of Paris, and our own *Philosophical Transactions*, which afford several curious Relations. Farther to improve our Design, we have, as Occasion required, thrown-in certain short Pieces or Extracts relating to the History, Government, or Religions of foreign Nations, especially the Oriental, (taken chiefly from their own Authors) in order to supply the Travellers, who have not always had an Opportunity of obtaining an exact Knowledge of those Matters. Of this the Description of the Red-Sea from Abû'lfeida, the Discovery of Madera by Alcaforado; and more particularly the History of the Portuguese Conquests in India, with which the Volume begins, are Instances.

ALTHOUGH our Design is much more extensive than that of any Collection hitherto published, yet we propose to execute it in less Room than any of the former. To effect this, ^{Method of collecting} we have deviated from the common Method of collecting, and instead of giving each Author entire in the Order he was published, we separate his Journal and Adventures from his Remarks on Countries: The first we give by itself; the latter we incorporate with the Remarks of other Travellers to the same Parts.

THE Adventures of Travellers are generally very tedious, often trifling, and therefore admit of large Retrenchments; and as several Travellers visiting the same Parts must necessarily repeat the same Things, it is certain, that by this Way of collecting them, a vast deal of superfluous Matter will be expunged, and consequently Room made for introducing many more than could possibly be brought into the same Compass, according to the common Method. It is ^{Compar'd} true, Purchas and Harris, with a View to obtain the same End, have not only abridged their ^{with others} Travellers, but endeavoured to avoid Repetition. To effect this, their Course was, after giving one Author intire, to strike-out of the rest all such Remarks as seemed to be of the same Nature with those made by the first. But it is obvious, that this Method will make strange Havock with the Books, as it must render most of them so curtailed and imperfect, that the Reader will have only Parts or Pieces of an Author, instead of the Whole; and this in such an abrupt and unconnected Manner, that the Completeness of the few will in no Sort supply, or compensate for, the Deficiencies of the many. The Injury will extend even to the uncastrated Relations: For if some Remarks be struck-out of four Travellers, for Instance, in five, the four will not only be deprived of the Right and Property which they had in them equal to the fifth; but the fifth will be left destitute of the Vouchers requisite to support what he relates. These ill Consequences are the necessary Effect of this Way of managing Authors; whereas they are intirely avoided by the Method made use of in this Collection: For by incorporating the Remarks of several Travellers together, with proper References, the Whole will be preserved, as well as every particular Author's Property therein ascertained and distinguished, at the same Time that Repetition and Redundancy will be prevented.

BESIDES these considerable Advantages, other great Benefits flow from this Way of Col- ^{Advantages} lecting. In the first Place, the Reader, by finding all that relates to the same Things in the ^d several Authors brought together, will be saved the Trouble of turning from one to the other, in order to collect their scattered Remarks on every Subject; as well as avoid being tired with reading, or charged with paying for the same Things several Times over in different Authors. At the same Time, instead of a great many imperfect Accounts, which the Authors separately afford, he will be furnished with one complete Description, compiled from them all. And thus our Collection becomes a System of Modern Geography and History, as well as a Body of Voyages and Travels, exhibiting the Present State of all Nations, in the most concise, yet comprehensive Manner.

THIS Method has likewise contributed not a little to render the Work more perfect and ^{Procurer} accurate: For by having the Remarks of several Authors before him in one View, a Collector ^{Corrector} is best able to see their Errors and Defects; and, consequently, to adjust, correct, and supply them.

Discover
Plagiarism.

BY this Means likewise he can best discover the fictitious Relations from the genuine, the Copy from the Original, and trace the Theft through a Series of Authors to the Fountain-Head: For Instance, by comparing the several Voyages and Accounts of Guinea together, it appears, that almost all their Authors have copied, or rather stolen, from Artus in de Bry's Collection, (for they do not quote him) not excepting Bosman himself, who hitherto has passed unsuspected of Plagiarism. Upon a Discovery of this Nature, we generally take Care to point-out the Freebooter, and restore the Goods to their right Owners. We always pay a great Deference to the first Discoverers, or earliest Writers, whose Remarks we generally insert first in the Description; or, making them the Foundation, throw those of later Authors, into the Notes, in order to illustrate or confirm them.

Care of
Authors.

OUR View, however comprehensive, is not to insert every Relation that comes to hand, the good and bad without Distinction. On the contrary, we have been careful to make Choice of the best in all Languages; and not to give Place to any, which was not likely to contribute to the Improvement or Entertainment of the Reader: However, we do not always exclude an Author, who is not wholly worthless: Because, though in the common Way of collecting, he would prove a great Incumbrance, yet in ours he might be dispatched by Help of a short Abstract, and a few References under the Description of Places or Things; whereby all the Remarks, that may be of any Use in such Books, will be preserved, without clogging our Work with the Heaps of trifling Matters that accompany them in the Originals.

Abstracts.

HAVING given this general Account of our Scheme and its Advantages in a Work of this Nature, we come next to a more particular Detail of the Manner in which it has been executed. As to the Matter, it consists of two Sorts, Abstracts and Digests. The Abstracts contain the Journals of the Travels or Voyages, including the Adventures of the Authors, and other Occurrences, with the Descriptions of Places, especially when there are not Remarks of other Travellers to mix with them. Each Abstract is commonly preceded by an Introduction, or literary Article, wherein an Account is given of the Author, (so far as can be come at) and his Work, as to its Editions, Size, and Number of Pages, the Subject, or Contents. There is commonly added likewise, a short Critic or Judgment thereon, as to its Excellencies or Defects, with respect to Geography, History, Cuts and Maps.

Digests.

THE Digest contains the Remarks of several Voyagers or Travellers relating to any Country, the Inhabitants, or its natural Productions, incorporated together so as to form a regular Description; such as that of the Canary, or of the Cape de Verde Islands, in this Volume, already mentioned. But although in this Part the Observations of different Persons are mixed together, yet they are particularly distinguished by References to the Books from whence they were extracted. Care likewise is taken in the Abstracts to cite the Page from Time to Time, for the Satisfaction of such as may have a Mind to consult the Originals.

Way of in-
corporating.

WHERE Authors agree in their Remarks on any particular Place, or Thing, we make one Account serve for all: And where they disagree, we either give the different Accounts in the Text; or, inserting only that which we judge most exact, throw the rest into the Notes.

Supplying
and correct-
ing.

IN these Notes, which are geographical, historical, and critical, we have done our best to correct the Errors, determine or reconcile the Differences, clear-up Obscurities, and supply small Deficiencies, which frequently occur in the Travellers, from various auxiliary Writers: But this we sometimes do in the Text, as our Method of incorporating the Remarks of different Authors will admit of it; and when the Point to be examined is of more than ordinary Importance to Geography or History, we introduce a particular Dissertation on the Occasion.

Difficulties
about them.

HOWEVER, after all our earnest Endeavours to correct Errors, and determine Differences, it is not to be presumed, that we have always succeeded to the Reader's Satisfaction: For when the Difference is between only two Authors, or there are as many Vouchers on one Side of the Question as the other, it is often very difficult to determine where the Truth lies, unless we

The PREFACE.

ix

~~we~~ have some unexceptionable-Authority to guide us, such as the Writers of the Country, to ~~which the Fact relates.~~

BUT of all Matters, in which the Travellers differ from each other, there are none more difficult to settle than those which concern the Names used in distant Countries. It was a principal View, in this Design, to reduce all such Names of Places, Things, and Persons, found in Authors of different Nations, to the English Orthography; and to introduce such an Uniformity through the Work, that the same Place should always be found under the same Name in the Text.

TO obtain the first of these Ends, it is sufficient to be acquainted with the Alphabets or ^{Uniformity} Letters in use with those Nations to whom such Authors belong, or in whose Language they ^{as it} have written their Voyages: But it proves exceeding difficult, and often impracticable, to procure the second End, because Travellers of the same Nation frequently write foreign Names different Ways. Whether this happens through Neglect in learning the Names; or else, because being forced to invent Characters, (for want of Letters in their own Language to express Sounds in others) they make various Choices; or, thirdly, (which is frequently the Case) because they copy from Authors of other Nations: Whichever is the Case, it follows, that if such Names be reduced to the English Idiom, there will be just the same Disagreement amongst them, as if they had been transcribed, without any Alteration. Nor is it possible to bring them to an Uniformity, but by knowing how such Names are written or pronounced by the Natives who use them.

BUT although this Knowledge may be, in a good Measure, obtained so far as relates to the ^{Names in} Languages of Europe, and those of Asia, commonly called the Oriental, and perhaps a few ^{practicable} others, yet with respect to those Nations, who have no Books nor Characters, such as the Inhabitants of Guinea, and most Parts of Africa, as well as all America; or, whose Books and Characters (if they have any) are little known to us, such as those on the Coast of Malabar, Kormandel, and other Parts of the Indies, it is very difficult to come at the Orthography, or true Pronunciation of their proper or local Names. For these Reasons, having been often at a Loss in this Particular, we thought ourselves obliged to retain such uncertain Names in the Text, only reducing them to the Propriety of the English Letters, rather than make use constantly of one, which we were not sure was the genuine Name.

ON the other Hand, when once we have (or think we have) found ~~out~~ the true Name, we ^{Various} take Care to use no other in the Text; the rest we consign to the Notes. ^{Names re-} By this Means, not only ^{tained.} Mistakes, if any be committed by us, may be rectified, and Justice done the respective Authors, but the several various Readings of the same Name ~~will be retained~~; which are very necessary to be known by all Geographers and Historians, in order to discover the Identity of Places. They likewise furnish very proper Materials for geographical Dictionaries: For unless the various Names, under which the same Place occurs in different Authors, are to be met-with in such Books, one cannot always be sure of finding the Place he wants.

ENOUGH has been said, we presume, to apologize for the same Name being sometimes spelt differently in our Abstracts from different Authors. But to remedy this Defect as far as may be, we usually insert in the Margin what we conceive to be the true Name, at least that which is most commonly in Use; and this may account for the Difference which often appears between the Names in the Margin, which are generally uniform, and those retained in the Text.

IN reducing the foreign Names (by which we understand those used by Nations, who do ^{Rules for re-} not use the Roman Character) to the English Idiom, we have generally observed the follow- ^{ducing them} ing Rules: First, We never employ different Letters to express the same Sound: For this Reason we always use k in Place of c, and j Consonant before e and i Vowel instead of g: Except when it is used hard* before those Letters, as in gild; or we are in Doubt which Way the

* It is always hard in the Dutch, German, and other Northern Languages; and soft in the French, Italian, and Spanish before e and i.

Author

The PREFACE.

*Author used it, in which Case we join the Aspirate, writing gh. We do the same to express
gue of the French, which we write ghe; except in some Names, which, by other ~~Authors~~,
we find to terminate in go; as, Camalingue, we write Kamalingo, not Kamalinghe. Se-
condly, The broad and long a of the French and other Nations, like our a in all, we express
by an â circumflexed. When the e is to be sounded at the End of Words, we mark it with an
Accute, or Grave: The î stands for double ee; the ô shews that this Letter is to have its
natural Sound, as in bore: û is equivalent to oo in English, and ou in French; unless where
this last Diphthong stands for w, as it frequently does, the French not having that Letter in
their Language.*

To the Eng-
lish Idiom.

*WE employ sh for the French ch, and Portugeze x; ch for the French tch, the High-
Dutch tsch, or the Italian c before e or i. The French and German J Consonant we com-
monly turn into Y, and never use this last Letter as a Vowel, or at the End of English so-
foreign Names immediately after a Consonant; thus, for Barfally, we write Barfalli. Kh is to
be sounded gutturally: Dh soft or lissing, like th in the or thou.*

Uniformity so
far.

*ALTHOUGH we do not pretend, by these Rules in Writing, to reduce foreign Names
to their true Sounds, as written or pronounced by the Nations who use them, yet we propose
thereby to convey to an English Reader the true Sound, according to the Language of the Au-
thor, from whence they are taken; and to introduce such an Uniformity in the Orthography,
that there may be no Danger of finding the same Name in different Places written according to
the Idiom of several different Nations, as is the Case in all other Collections hitherto published;
so that the Generalisty of Readers must take them for so many different Names, it being impossible
to know them to be the same, under so great a Change, as the various Ways of writing them oc-
casions*. And this Advantage, which our Collection claims above all others, will, we hope,
atone for the other orthographical Differences, which, for the Reasons already mentioned, it
was not in our Power to remedy.*

Marked as to
Cuts,

*WITH regard to Cuts and Maps, which in sorting will accompany the Remarks, we shall
throw-out all Duplicates, and only insert the best of a Kind to be found in the Travellers: For
Instance, Herbert, Struys, Gemelli, Chardin, Kæmpfer, and le Bruyn, have given
Draughts of Persopolis: But to admit those of the first three, would be doing an Injury
to the Work, as being either spurious or trifling; and to insert those of the last three would be
superfluous, since one of them, for Instance, le Bruyn's, might serve. For the same Reason
we reject most of those Cuts representing Prospects, Battles, Sieges, and the like, which gene-
rally are the Product of the Painter's Fancy, and of Use only to swell the Bulk and Price of
Books. In the Place of the ~~same~~ ^{like} ~~insert~~ the Animals and Vegetables; with the Habits of the
several Nations, where ~~reciting~~ ^{reciting} in the Travellers, taken from the best Draughts hitherto
published.*

Charts,

*IN like Manner, though we shall omit Herbert's Map of the Caspian-Sea, (however in-
serted in Harris's Collection) as well as those of Sandys, Tournefort, and le Bruyn's Voya-
ges, with the like copied from other faulty Maps, or drawn without any Skill, we shall care-
fully preserve all Maps and Charts taken by the Travellers on the Spot, or copied from those of
the Natives: Such as Olearius's Map of the Wolga; the Russian Chart of the Caspian-Sea,
and Map of Siberia; the Map of Colchis, and the Country about Basrah, published in The-
venot's Collection; and that of Attica, made by Wheeler. The like we shall do by the
Draughts and Plans of Coasts, Harbours, and Cities, found in Cook, Rogers, Frazier,
Mbrand Ides, and other Authors.*

And Maps,

*WHERE several have given Maps of the same Country, as those of Egypt, the Delta,
or the Nile, published by Lucas, Sicard, and Doctor Pocock, we shall either insert one of
them improved from the rest, or else a new Draught made from them all. On the other Hand,*

*This for Instance, may appear from the Word Shin, which a French Author writes Chin; a German,
Schin; a Polish, Szin; an Italian, Scin; and a Portugeze, Xin.*

where

The P R E F A C E.

xi

where we meet with a great many particular or provincial Maps of the same Country, such as those of Tibet, China, or Tartary, transmitted by the Jesuites, we shall perhaps make general Maps serve instead of them.

BUT as the Charts or Maps of Value, given by Travellers, fall far short of exhibiting ^{where} the Coasts and Countries throughout the World, we have supplied that Defect from the best ^{existing} Draughts or Surveys published by the Hydrographers, or Geographers; of which the accurate Charts, contained in this Volume, are a Proof; and have frequently new-drawn them from the best Authorities and Materials, particularly those collected in this Work. In the Maps we have delineated the Roads, and in both distinguished the Towns, whose Situation have been determined by Astronomers, Asiatic as well as European, inserting the Observations themselves at their respective Places.

FROM what has been said, it may be presumed, that our Collection will have all the ^{same} Advantages required in a Work of this Nature: There will be found Abundance without Superfluity; Abridgments without Deficiency; Quotations will stand in Place of entire Volumes, and one Account of Things instead of many: In short, all the Inconveniences, which arise in Collections, from Matters of the same Kind being dispersed, and those of different Natures mixed, will be wholly avoided.

WE presume the Reader will be pleased with our Method of dividing the Volumes into ^{Form of} Books, Chapters, and Sections, with Running-Titles, Side-Notes and Contents; as it gives him ^{Work} a more distinct and ready View of the Matters treated of in every Division or Subdivision of the Work. It was intended to have added an Index at the End of this Volume: But in regard, some of our Subscribers have signified their Opinion, that one general Index is preferable to many, we shall conform ourselves to their Sentiments, unless, before the second Volume be finished, it may be found more convenient to give two rather than one.

BY the present Undertaking we have had the Improvement of Geography, Navigation, ^{Ends pro-} and Natural-History, principally in View, by bringing together a sufficient Quantity of ^{posed} Materials, for making accurate Maps, Charts and Descriptions of foreign Countries.

WE shall conclude our Preface by only farther acquainting the Reader, that if he meets with less Amusement in some Parts of this Volume, than he will find in those which are to follow, it must be imputed to the Collector's Desire of preserving the first Voyages and Discoveries, particularly those of the English Nation, which were written chiefly for the Information of future Navigators.

London, December 11, 1744.

A N

ALPHABETICAL LIST

O F T H E

SUBSCRIBERS to this WORK.

A.

MR. Robert Abbon, of Yarmouth, Norfolk.
 Sir Thomas Ackland, Bart.
 Mr Abraham Ackworth.
 Mr. Adams.
 Mr. Thomas Adams.
 The Rev Mr Addenbrooke.
 The Rev Mr Addison.
 Mr. Andrew Adlan.
 Mr. Agutter, Alderman of St. Albans.
 John Ainsworth, of Pleasington in Lancashire, Esq;
 Mr. Robert Akenhead, Bookfeller in Newcastle.
 The Rev. Mr. John Allen, of Enfield.
 Mr. William Aleyn, Merchant in Bristol.
 Mr. John Allwood, of Sheffield.
 Mr. John Andrews.
 Michael Anne, of Freckley in Yorkshire, Esq;
 Roger Armstrong, Esq;
 Captain Alhe.
 Mr. Thomas Astill.
 Sir Jacob Astley, of Melton-Constable in Norfolk,
 Bart.
 Mr. Thomas Astley, Merchant in London.
 Mr. Richard Astley.
 Mr. Thomas Astley, of Preston.
 The Rev Dr. Astry, Treasurer of St Paul's.
 Mr. Michael Atkins.
 Mr. Thomas Atkinson, of Dalton, Lancashire.
 Mr. William Atkinson, of Bristol.
 Mr. Atkinson.
 Mr. Attelley, of Norwich.
 John Atwood, of Sanderstead, Esq;
 Mr. Aubert.
 Mr. Avery.
 Mr. Avison, Organist in Newcastle.
 Mr. Stephen Aulton, Bookfeller in London.
 Mr. William Aulton.
 Rev. Mr. Ayloough, of Highworth, Wiltshire.

B.

THE Right Hon. Lord Viscount Barrington
 Sir John Barnard, Knight, Alderman of Lon-
 don
 Mr. Barnard, of Curfitors-Street.
 Henry Barham, Esq;
 Captain Duncomb Backwell
 Mr. Thomas Bacon.
 Mr. Humphrey Bailey, 7 Sets.
 Mr. Bailey.
 The Rev. Dr. Baker, Vicar of Farringdon, Berks.
 Mr. Richard Baker.
 Richard Baldwin, of Ludlow, Esq;
 Mr. John Baldwin.
 *Mr. Robert Baldwin, Apothecary in Farringdon.
 Mr. Richard Baldwin, Bookfeller in London.
 Mr. Samuel Baldwin, of Covent-Garden.
 Dr. Balguy, of Peterborough.
 The Rev. Mr. Balguy.
 Mr. George Ballard, at Portbury near Bristol.
 Mr. Henry Banyer.
 Mr. John Banks
 Mr. Abraham Barjeau.
 Mr. Richard Barton, of Manchester.
 Mr. James Barnaart
 Rev. Mr. Barford, of Stanbridge.
 Samuel Barker, Esq;
 Dr. Barker.
 Mr. John Barrow, of the Forest of Dean, Gloucester-
 shire.
 Mr. Isaac Bafire, Engraver, 3 Sets.
 Mr. William Barston.
 Mr. Bateman.
 Mr. John Batson.
 Mr. John Baxter.
 Right Hon. Lady Aubrey Beauclerk.
 Mr. Mark Beaufoy, Distiller in Bristol.
 *Mr. and Mrs. Beckford, of New Burlington-Street.
 *Mr.

A LIST of SUBSCRIBERS.

- Mr. James Beddes**, of Bristol.
Mr. Thomas Bedwell.
~~Thomas Beech~~, Esq;
The Rev. Mr. Thomas Bellamy, of Kingston, Surrey.
Mr. Thomas Bellamy, of Kingston.
Mr. Ralph Bell, Surgeon.
Mr. John Bell.
William Benson, Esq; Auditor of the Imprest.
Rev. Mr. John Berjeu.
Mr. Thomas Berjew, Apothecary in Bristol.
Monfieur de Berger, Conseiller de la Cour, et Medicin
 de S. M. Brittanique à Celle.
Mr. Frederick Bernard.
Mr. John Berry, Printer in Manchester.
Mr. James Beeston.
Slingby Bethell, Esq;
Mr. Betts, of University College, Oxford.
Mr. Bigland, Merchant in Peterborough.
Mr. Thomas Bishop.
Mr. Thomas Bishop, jun.
Mr. John Bird.
Mr. Benjamin Bird, Gunsmith.
Ezekiel Bird, Esq;
Mr. Anthony Birks.
Mr. Matthew Birtill.
Rev. Mr. Theophilus Blackall, Chancellor of the
 Diocese of Exeter.
Rev. Mr. Blackburn, Vicar of Richmond, Yorkshire.
Mr. Blackdon.
Sir William Blackett, Bart.
Edward Blacket, of Newby in Yorkshire, Esq;
Mr. Blackman, Bookseller in Reading.
Mr. Leeson Blackwood, Merchant in Bristol.
Mr. John Bladwell.
Mr. James Blake.
Mr. Elias Bland.
Mr. William Blathwaite, of Peterborough.
Mr. Boice, of Highgate.
Mr. Edward Bold.
Rev. Mr. Blomefield, of Norfolk.
Mr. John Bond.
Mr. William Bonham.
J. Bonython, of Bristol, M. D.
Captain Matthew Bookey.
Mr. John Bloome, of Bristol.
Mr. Booth.
Mr. Francis Booth.
Mr. Robert Booth.
Mr. Francis Bofon.
Mr. Richard Bosworth.
Mr. Godfrey Bouchier, Bookseller in Peterborough.
Rev. Mr. Bourdillon.
Mr. Joseph Bouquet.
Captain Bourne, of Bristol.
Rev. Mr. Bouchery.
Rev. Mr. Bowditch, of Winterflow.
Mr. William Bowen, Merchant in Bristol.
Mr. Maurice Bowen, Engraver.
Mr. Miles Bower, jun. of Manchester.
Rev. Mr. Charles Bowles, of Donhead.
Rev. Mr. William Bowles, of Woodford, Wiltshire.
Mr. Thomas Bowles.
Mr. John Bowles.
Mr. James Bowyer, jun. Apothecary in Bristol.
Mr. Boyzier.
- Mr. Bradley**.
Mr. Richard Brand.
Rev. Mr. Branfoot, of Boswell, Yorkshire.
John Brickdale, sen. of Bristol, Esq;
The Right Rev. the Lord Bishop of Bristol.
Mr. Peter Brooke, of Manchester.
Mr. Brookes, Bookseller in Coventry.
Mr. Brotherton, of Greenwich.
Mr. Brotherton, jun. of Greenwich.
Mr. Brotherton, Bookseller in London.
Mr. John Broughton.
Mr. Samuel Broughton.
Thomas Brown, Esq;
Edmund Brown, of Lincolns-Inn, Esq;
Mr. Samuel Brown.
Mr. John Brown.
Mr. Peter Brown, Bookseller in Bristol, 25 Sets.
Mr. Matthew Brown, Copper-Plate Printer.
Michael Browning, Esq;
Sir John Bruce Hope, Bart. Member of Parliament.
Mr. Martyn Bryson, Bookseller in Newcastle, 50 Sets.
Mr. John Buckland.
Mr. William Budding, Linen-Draper in Bristol.
Mr. James Budget.
Mr. Kelsey Bull.
Mr. Robert Bulman.
Mr. Thomas Bumbey, Collector of Excise at Lewes.
Rev. Mr. Burcham, of Norwich.
William Burgh, of Gloucestershire, Esq;
John Burrard, of Lymmington, Esq;
Mr. Thomas Burny.
Mr. Blisset Burton.
Mr. Richard Bury.
Rev. Mr. Gilbert Burnet, of St. James's, Clerkenwell.
Mr. Edward Burnet.
John Burton, of Heath in Yorkshire, Esq;
Mr. Philip Barton.
Mr. Busby.
Mr. John Bush, Attorney at Law in Bristol.
Mr. Thomas Butcher.
- Salisbury Cade**, Esq;
Robert Cann, Esq;
Mr. Carlos, Bookseller in Norwich.
Mr. Calley.
Sir James Carnegie, Bart. Member of Parliament.
Mr. Richard Carpenter, Attorney at Law, in Faring-
 don, Berks.
Mr. George Carrington.
Mr. Carter, Master of the Grammar School at New-
 ington, Middlesex.
Mr. Edward Carter.
Mr. John Carter, Merchant in Portsmouth.
Rev. Mr. Philip Carter, of St. Osyth.
Mr. John Carter, Sugar-Baker in Goodman's Fields.
Mr. Charles Cary, of St. James's Place.
Mr. Henry Cary.
Mr. James Cafe, of Barbadoes.
Mr. William Cailon, Letter-Founder, in Chiswell-Street.
J. Catanach, Esq; of the Island of Madera.
Sir Thomas Cave, Bart. Knight of the Shire for the
 County of Leicester.
Mr. William Calverly.
Mr. Caverly, Druggist in Southwark.

Mr.

A LIST of SUBSCRIBERS.

- Mr Thomas Cauldwell, of Portbury, near Bristol.
 Mr Chadwick, of Saltord, Lancashire
 Mr. William Chaloner, Merchant in Bristol.
 Mr Chamier.
 Mr. Benjamin Champion.
 Mr. Henry Chapelle, Bookseller.
 Dr George Charles, High-Master of St. Paul's-School.
 Mrs Chate, Bookseller in Norwich.
 The Right Hon. Lady Chedworth.
 Mr. John Chenhall, of Helfton Cornwall.
 Mr Robert Chennery, of Lynn.
 Sir John Chester, Bart. Knight of the Shire for the
 County of Bedford
 Mr. John Chester.
 James Chetham, of Smed in Lancashire, Esq;
 Mr John Child, of Lynn
 Mr. George Child, Engraver
 John Cholwell, of the Temple, Esq,
 Mr Alexander Chorky.
 Mr. Thomas Clapham
 The Rev Dr. John Clarke, Dean of Salisbury.
 Godfrey Clarke, Esq,
 The Rev Mr Clarke, Sur Master of St. Paul's-School.
 Mr Edward Clarke
 Mr John Clarke, of Enfield
 Mr. John Clarke, Bookseller, in St Paul's Church-
 Yard
 Mr John Clarke, Bookseller, at the Royal-Exchange.
 Mr. Clarke, of Grosvenor-Square.
 Mr John Clarke of Lyons-Inn
 Mr Charles Clavey
 Mr. James Cleakes.
 Mr. Joseph Clegg
 Mr Richard Clements, Bookseller in Oxford.
 Rev Mr Clerke
 Mr. Edward Coldham.
 Mr. Cole, Goldsmith in Lombard-Street.
 Mr Luke Coleby, of Newington, Surrey.
 Henry Collingwood, Esq,
 Mr. Collins, Bookseller in Salisbury, 50 Set.
 Lieutenant-General Collyer, of Croydon.
 Rev. Mr. Nathaniel Collyer, of Croydon.
 Mr. George Colsworthy, Grocer in ~~St. Paul's~~
 Rev. Mr. Caleb Colton, Vicar of Shrivenham, Berks.
 Valens Commn, Esq;
 The Right Hon. the Countess of Coningsby.
 Rev. Mr. Cooke, Rector of Stockley in Yorkshire.
 Mr. William Cooke, Attorney at Law in Farringdon,
 Berks.
 Dr. Cooper, Physician in Oxford.
 Mr. John Cooper
 Mrs. Cooper, Bookseller in London.
 Mr. John Cope, of Essex-Square.
 Michael Cormick, of Ireland, Esq;
 Mr. Daniel Cotterell.
 Mr. George Cotterell.
 Mr Jacob Couppe
 Mr. Cox.
 Mr. Craycroft, Attorney at Law.
 Mr. Samuel Craghead, of Crosby-Square.
 Mr. Craighton, Bookseller in Ipswich, 25 Sets.
 Rev. Dr Cresswicke, Dean of Wells.
 Mr. Francis Creuze, Jeweller.
 Mr. Samuel Creswell, of Manchester.
 Nicholas Crisp, Esq;
 Mr. Thomas Crispe
 Mr William Crompton.
 Mr. Richard Cropper, of Burton, Westmorland.
 Mr. John Crosse, Merchant in Bristol.
 Mr John Croade.
 Mr. John Crowe
 Byham Crump, Esq,
 The Rev Mr John Culliford, Rector of St. Wea-
 burg, Bristol.
 Mr George Cumberland.
 William Curre, Esq; at the Grange near Chepstow,
 Monmouthshire.
 Sir Nathaniel Curzon, Bart. Knight of the Shire for
 the County of Derby
- D
- M** R William Daniel, Merchant in Bristol.
 Morgan Davies, of Coomb in Carmarthen-
 shire, Esq;
 Mr James Davies, of Devizes, M. B.
 Mr William Davie, Merchant in Bristol.
 Mr Robert Davis
 Mr John Davis.
 Mr Davison.
 Mr Davison, of London, Bookseller.
 The Hon. Mr Baron Dawson
 Richard Dawson, of York, Esq;
 Mr Christopher Dawson.
 Mrs Day.
 Mr William Deacle, of Albemarle-Street, Clerkenwell.
 Dr Thomas Deacon, Physician in Manchester.
 George Denning of Putney, Esq;
 Mr De la Bere.
 General Des Bordes, of Enfield.
 Mr. Lewis Desormeaux.
 Mr. Anthony D' Esgens.
 Mr Jeremiah Deverell, Surgeon in Bristol.
 Henry Dickinson, of Manchester, Esq;
 Dr Dunsdale, Physician in Hertford.
 Mr Dines
 Mr. Henry Dobson.
 Rev. Mr Thomas Dockwray.
 George Dodson, Esq;
 Mr. Dolling.
 Capt. Draper, of Hatton-Garden.
 Mr Joseph Drew, Bookseller in Exeter.
 Mr. Drummond. Bookseller in Edinburgh, 25 Sets.
 The Right Hon. Lord Viscount Duncannon, Member
 of Parliament for Derby.
 Mr. Charles Dunbar
 Mr. Duncombe.
 John Durbin, of Bristol, Esq;
 Mr. William Dangworth, of Bishopsgate-street.
 Mr. Duke, of Baliol-College, Oxford.
 Mr. Dunn.
 Mr. Dyer, of Mile-End.
 Mr. Ely Dyson.
- E
- M** R. William Eagles, Merchant in Bristol.
 The Hon. Colonel Earle.
 Mr. Thomas Earle.
 Mr. Gotobed East, of Ely.
 Mr. Edward Easton, Bookseller in Salisbury
 Peter Eaton, Esq;
 Mr.

A LIST of SUBSCRIBERS.

Alexander Edmonston, Esq;
 Mr. Egerton, of Friday-Street.
 The Right Hon. the Earl of Egmont.
 Mrs. Egglefhan.
 Mr. Ekeroth.
 Mr. Francis Elliot, of Godalmin.
 The Lady Ellis.
 Mr. Richard Ellis.
 Mr. John Elkworth.
 Abraham-Isaac Elton, Esq; Barrister at Law in Bristol.
 Mr. Thomas Elton.
 Mr. Richard Elton.
 Mr. Robert England.
 Mr. William Ernie of the Isle of Wight.
 Mr. Etheringham.
 Mr. Evans.
 Mr. Charles Evans.
 Mr. Thomas Evans.
 Mr. Gabriel Everard.
 The Right Rev. the Lord Bishop of Exeter.
 John Exton, Esq;

F.

MR. Farley, Printer in Bristol.
 Mr Farley, Printer in Exeter.
 Mr Richard Farmer.
 Mr Thomas Farmer, Merchant in Bristol.
 Mr Richard Farr, Junior, Merchant in Bristol.
 Mr Thomas Farr, Attorney at Law in Bristol.
 Mr Farrer, of Doctors-Commons.
 Mr Thomas Farrington, of Brompton near Chatham
 Mr Phillip Faver, of Great St. Helens.
 Mr. Thomas Fawson, of St Paul's Church-Yard.
 Mr William Fead, of the Old-Jewry.
 Ralph Feltham, Esq;
 Mr Thomas Fenwick.
 Col. Le Ferris.
 Mr. Paul Ferris.
 Mr George Ferraby, Bookfeller in Hull.
 Mr Paul Fisher, Merchant in Bristol.
 Mr. Thomas Fisher
 Mr Daniel Fisher, Supervisor of Excise at Tewksbury.
 Mr George Fischer, of Salford.
 Mr. James Fleming, Bookfeller in Newcastle.
 Mr. Daniel De Flores
 Mr William Flores
 Mr. Charles Flutter, of Guilford.
 Mr. Henry Flutter, of Guilford.
 The Rev. Dr Fonnereau
 Mr Edward Foot, of Bristol.
 The Rev Mr. Ford
 John Foster, of Gray's-Inn, Esq;
 Mr. Foster, Merchant in London.
 Mr. John Fowler, of the Custom-House.
 Mr. Fownes
 Mr. William Francklin, Surgeon in Norwich.
 Mr Bernard Frederick.
 Mr. James Freeman.
 Mr. Friend
 Mr. Thomas Frolick,
 Mr. Froling, at the Hills near Cambridge.
 Mr. James Frushard.
 Mr. James Fryer, of Gleaston Lancashire.
 Mr. John Phillippe Fuhr, Merchant in Bristol.

G.

MR. Gale.
 Mr. Stephen Galhié.
 Mr. Richard Gandy.
 Mr. Thomas Gapen
 The Rev. Mr. John Gardiner, Rector of Henbury in Gloucestershire.
 Mr. Richard Gardiner, of Sudbury
 Mr. Francis Gattins, Engineer at Berwick.
 Mr. Peter Henry Gauvain.
 Mr. Samuel Gaze, Junior, of Norwich.
 Mr. Joseph Gibbs.
 Mr. Gibson, of King-Street, Bloomsbury.
 Mr. Nathaniel Gilbert, of Gray's-Inn.
 Mr Philip Glas, of London, Stationer.
 Mr. Jonathan Glead, Bookfeller in Norwich.
 Mr. Glynn, of Hatton-Garden.
 Mr. David Godin.
 Mr. James Godin
 Mr Hodges Godwin, Merchant in Bristol.
 Mr. Joseph Godwin, Merchant in Bristol.
 Mr. Richard Going.
 Mr William Gomm, Merchant, in Clerkenwell.
 The Rev Mr Goodwin, of Balliol College, Oxford.
 Mr. Gore, of Sarum.
 Harry Gough, Esq; one of the Directors of the East-India Company, and Member of Parliament for Bramber
 Mr. Alexander Graham, 2 Sets
 Mr. Granger, of Salisbury Court.
 Mr. Jonathan Graves.
 Mr. John Gray.
 Rev Mr. Green, of Sarum.
 Mr. Green, of St John's-College, Oxford.
 Mr. Green, of Manchester.
 Mr Peter Green, of Chigwell Essex
 Mr. John Green, of Oldstreet-Square.
 Mr. Gregg.
 Mr. Gregson.
 Mrs. Grenville.
 Dr. Robert Gresley, Physician in Bristol.
 Mrs Greville, of Leau-Lect, Soho.
 Mr. Giles Greville, Apothecary in Bristol.
 Mr. ~~Valentine~~ ~~instead~~.
 Mr. Grove, Attorney at Law.
 Mr Gumbridge, of Clifford's-Inn.
 Mr William Gurman.
 Mr. Edward Gwatkin, Merchant in Bristol.
 The Right Hon. Phillips Gybbon, Esq; Member of Parliament for Rye, and one of the Lords of the Treasury.

H.

MR. Hague.
 Mr John Hall.
 Rev Mr. Hall, Rector of Bridford, Devon.
 Mr Ezekiel Hall, of Crutched-Fryers.
 Mr. Robert Halfey
 Rev. Mr. Hamblen, of St. Hilary, Cornwall.
 The Rev. Mr. Hamlen, of Outwell near Wisbech.
 Mr Joseph Hancock of Wisbech.
 Miss Handasyde, of Sackville-Street.
 The Rev. Dr. Harbin.
 Mr. Thomas Harbin.
 Mr. Hardesty.

Mr.

A LIST of SUBSCRIBERS.

- Mr. James Hardwicke, Attorney at Law in Bristol.
 Humphry Harris, Esq;
 Mr. Harris, of Shaftsbury.
 Mr. Thomas Harrison
 Mr. Hart.
 Mr. Joseph Hartwell, of Canon-Street.
 Mr. Harvey
 Mr. William Harvard.
 Mr. James Harwood.
 Mr. Charles Hawkins, Attorney at Law in Bristol.
 Mr. John Hawkins, of Brington near Bristol.
 Rev. Mr. Hawtree, Subdean of Exeter
 William Hay, Esq; Member of Parliament for Sea-
 ford in Suffex, Commissioner of the Navy.
 The Rev. Mr. Archdeacon Hayter
 Mr. Henry Hayter
 The Rev. Mr. Hayward, of Warrington.
 John Hearl, of Penryn, Esq,
 Mr. Ralph Heath.
 Mr. Heath.
 David Heckstetter, of Southgate, Esq;
 John Hedworth, Esq, Knight of the Shire for the
 County of Durham.
 Mr. John Hemmerton.
 Mrs. Elizabeth Hemsworth.
 Mr. Robert Henderson, of Grace Church Street.
 Mr. William Henn.
 The Hon. Nicholas Herbert, Esq, Member of Par-
 liament for Newport, Cornwall.
 Dr. Hickman, Physician, in Arlington-Street.
 Mr. Bernard Hicks, Apothecary in Norwich.
 Mr. Benjamin Hickey, Bookseller in Bristol.
 Mr. Hildyard, Bookseller in York, 25 Sets.
 Mr. Hildyard in Bishopsgate-Street
 Mr. James Hildhouse, junior, Merchant in Bristol.
 Mr. George Hill, Attorney at Law in Bristol.
 John Hill, Esq; of Clarges-Street.
 Mr. John Hill, Merchant.
 Thomas Hill, Esq; of the Plantation-Office.
 Mrs. Hillman, of Sarum.
 Robert Hilton, Esq;
 Mr. Robert Hilton.
 Mr. Hind, of Rippon, Yorkshire.
 Mr. Charles Hitch, Bookseller, 50 Sets.
 The Rev. Mr. Hoare.
 Mr. Joseph Hodder, of Bristol.
 Mr. James Hodgson, F. R. S. and Master of the
 Mathematical-School, Christ's Hospital.
 Mr. Thomas Hogben, Land-Surveyor, and Master of
 the Free School of Smarden.
 Mr. Hogins
 Mr. Thomas Holland.
 Miss Hollman.
 Mr. William Hollister, of Bristol.
 Mr. Ambrose Holloway, 3 Sets.
 Mr. Thomas Holmes, Surgeon in Manchester.
 Mr. John Holt, of Holkenhead, Lancashire.
 Mr. Thomas Hollingworth, Bookseller, in Lynn.
 Edward Hooper, Esq; Member of Parliament for
 Christ-Church, Hampshire.
 Mr. John Horley.
 Mr. John Horseman.
 John Howe, of Ongar, Esq;
 Mr. Howard.
 Mr. George Howells, of Bristol.
 Mr. George Hoy, of Laid Lane.
 Mr. James Hubbard, junior, of the Pay-Office.
 Mr. Newark Hudson.
 Mr. Thomas Hudson.
 Mr. Hughes, of Bishopsgate-Street.
 Mr. John Hull, Engraver.
 Mr. Louis Peter Hume
 Mr. Oliver Humphries, of St. John's-Street.
 Walter Hungerford, Esq; Member of Parliament for
 Calne, Wilts.
 Mr. William Hunt, Deputy of Castle-Baynard Ward
 Mr. Richard Hunt.
 Mr. Daniel Hunt, of Crutched-Fryers.
 Mr. Hunt.
 Mr. Husley, Attorney in Bishopsgate-Street.
 The Rev. John Hutchins, M. A.
 Mr. John Hyde, of Prestwicke, Lancashire.
- I,
- M**R William Jackling.
 Richard Jackson, junior, Esq; of Norfolk.
 Mr. Jackson, Banker, in Lombard-Street.
 Mr. Samuel Jacock.
 Mr. David James
 Mr. James Jurneson.
 Sir Theodore Janssen, Bart.
 Edward Jasper, Esq,
 Mr. Jeane.
 Mr. Thomas Jeanes
 Andrew Jelf, Esq;
 Rev. Mr. Jenkin.
 Mr. Jenkins, of Maddox-Street.
 Mr. Jennour, of Friday-Street.
 Mr. Arthur Jepson, junior, Merchant in Bristol.
 Mr. Samuel Illing
 Mr. Charles Image.
 The Right Hon. the Earl of Inchiquin.
 Messrs Innes and Seaton, in Mincing-Lane.
 Mr. John Jocham, of the Custom-House in Bristol
 Mr. Richard Johns, of Helston.
 Mr. Augustin Johnson.
 Mr. Stephen Johnson.
 Mr. Thomas Johnston, of Manchester
 Mr. Johnson, of Norwich.
 Mr. William Johnson
 Mr. Joseph Jones
 Mr. Edward Jones.
 Mr. William Jones, Surgeon, in the Isle of Wight.
 Fitz-William Joze, of Plumtree, Esq;
 The Rev. Mr. Jortin.
 Sir William Irby, Bart. Member of Parliament for
 Launceston, Chamberlain to the Princess of Wales.
 Mr. John Irish, of Grace-Church-Street.
 Mr. John Irwin.
 Mr. Peter Isaac, of the Isle of Wight
- K.
- H**IS Grace, the Duke of Kingston.
 Mr. John Kay, of Manchester.
 Mr. Kearwood.
 Mr. Walter Keble.
 Mr. Richard Keble.
 Mr. Alexander Kennaway.
 Mr. William Kennedy, of Manchester.
 Mr. John Kent, of Southwark.
- Mr.

A LIST OF SUBSCRIBERS.

Mr. Richard Kent, of Sarum.
 Mr. King, of Henrietta-Street.
 Mr. Alexander Kincaid, Bookseller, in Edinburgh.
 Robert King, of Catley, in Cambridgeshire, Esq;
 Mr. King of St. Peter's-Hill.
 Colonel Kingsley.
 Mr. Charles Kirkhall.
 Mr. John Kirshaw.
 Mr. Henry Kitchin.
 Mr. Thomas Kitchin, Engraver.
 Mr. Kite, of Canon-Street.
 Messrs. J. and P. Knapton, Booksellers, in London.
 Mr. William Knapton, of Lymington.
 The Rev. Mr. Knibb, Rector of Appleton, Berks.
 Mr. William Knight.
 Mr. William Isaac Kops, Merchant, in London.

L

MR. Edward Laight, Apothecary, in Bristol.
 Mr. Lane.
 Rev. Mr. William Langbain.
 Rev. Mr. Langford, 3 Sets.
 Mr. Henry Lathwell.
 Mr. John Laurence, of Norwich.
 Rev. Mr. Leach, of Norwich.
 Mr. Laurence Ledger, of Guilford.
 Mr. Lee, of Charter-House-Square.
 Mr. Lee, of Norwich.
 Mr. Thomas Leech, of Staples-Inn.
 Mr. Michael Lefire.
 Mr. Joseph Lester.
 Mr. Christopher Lethieullier.
 Mr. William Lethieullier.
 The Rev. Mr. Sampson Letfome.
 Mr. Isaac Levy.
 Mr. Zachary Levy.
 Mr. James Lewin.
 Mrs. Martha Lewis, Bookseller in Bristol, 106 Sets.
 Mr. Lewis, of Lambeth-Marsh.
 Mr. Joshua Lewis.
 Mr. Joseph Lightbody, of Sarum.
 Mr. Edward Linzee, Apothecary, in Portsmouth.
 Mr. John Lisle.
 Thomas Liston, of Aston, Somersetshire, Esq;
 Capt. Joseph Little, of Bristol.
 Mr. Joseph Little, Tobacconist, in Bristol.
 Mr. John Livsey.
 Mr. Lock, of Essex-Street.
 Mr. Henry Lock.
 Mr. Loddington.
 Mr. Joseph Lofly, Surgeon, in Bristol.
 Francis Longe, of Spixworth, Esq;
 Mr. Longe.
 Edward Longworth, Esq;
 Mr. William Lord, of Corfe-Castle, Isle of Purbeck.
 Mr. Henry Loubier, Merchant, in London.
 Mr. Charles Lowth.
 Mr. Lowther, of Clements-Lane.
 Mr. Thomas Lowther.
 Mr. Ludby.
 Mr. Robert Luddington.
 Mr. Peter Lullin.
 The Rev. Mr. Lupton, of Kirby-Mallam-Dale, Yorksh.

M.

THE Rev. Mr. Mall.
 The Rev. Mr. Manuel.
 Mr. Mandevile.
 Mr. John Manly.

Mr. John Manship, Merchant, in London.
 Mr. Manwaring.
 The Rev. Mr. Markham.
 Mr. James Marshall, of Twickenham.
 Mr. George Martin, Merchant, in London.
 Mr. Thomas Martin, Apothecary, in Bristol.
 Dr. John Martyn, F. R. S. and Professor of Botany,
 in the University of Cambridge.
 Mr. Joseph Mason, at the Fifth-Ponds, near Bristol.
 Mr. Mason, Surgeon, in Arundel-Street.
 Mr. Mason, of Seething-Lane.
 Mr. William Mason.
 — Massam, junior, Esq; of Norfolk.
 Mr. Peter Mazell.
 Mr. Mead of Norwich.
 Rev. Mr. Meard.
 Mr. George Meebourn.
 Mr. Wentworth Mettrick, of Manchester.
 Mr. Peter Midget.
 The Lady Milbank, of Hainaby, Yorkshire.
 Mr. Michael Miller, Merchant in Bristol.
 Mr. Alexander Miller, of Bristol.
 Mr. William Miller, Bookseller, in Edinburgh, 25 Sets.
 Mr. William Millet, Woollen-Draper, in Bristol.
 Richard Milnes, Esq;
 Mr. Mitchell.
 Mr. William Mitchell.
 Mr. Richard Mollineux, of Fenchurch-Street.
 Sir Cha. Molloy, Commander of the Carolina-Yatch.
 Mr. Monn.
 The Right Hon. Lord Montfort.
 Moses Montel, Esq;
 Mr. Benjamin Moon, of Bristol.
 Mr. William Moore, of Wood Street.
 Mr. Henry Moore, of Plymouth.
 Mr. Richard Montagu.
 Mr. Montagu, Bookeller, in Great-Queen-Street.
 The Rev. Mr. Morgan, of Southgate.
 Mr. John Morris.
 Mr. Mye.
 Mr. George Myers, of Tooting, Surrey.
 James Mytton, Esq;

N.

THE Rev. Mr. Edward Napper, of Sherbourn.
 Mr. Edward Neale, of Lombard-Street.
 Mr. James Neeld.
 George Nelthorpe, of Sea-Croft, Yorkshire, Esq;
 Mr. James Neve, of Haydon-Square.
 Mr. Newcomb, of Clapton, Hackney.
 Mr. Christopher Newman, of Norwich.
 Mr. Richard Newton.
 Mrs. Sarah Newton, Bookfeller, in Manchester, 25 Sets.
 Dr. Newington, Physician.
 Mr. Edward Nicholls, of Kings-Weston, near Bristol.
 Mr. Nicole, of Battersey.
 Mr. Norcote.
 Mr. John Norman, Haberdasher, in Bristol.
 Robert North, of Scarborough, in Yorkshire, Esq;
 Mr. North.
 Mr. Norton, Bookfeller, in London.
 Mr. William Nofs.
 Mr. Peter Noualle.
 John Noyes, Esq;

O.

HIS Excellency General Oglethorpe, 2 Sets.
 Mr. Edward Oldfield.

Mr.

A LIST OF SUBSCRIBERS.

Mr. Thomas Omer
 Samuel Ongley, Esq; Memb. of Parl. for Bedford.
 Mr. Joseph Ord
 Captain Humphry Ormes.
 Mr. Richard Overal.
 Mr. James Overal.
 Mr. John Overlove.
 Mr. John Outhwaite.
 The Rev Mr. Owen, of Hascomb.

P.

MR James Paine.
 Mrs Sarah Paine
 Mr. Thomas Paine, Bookbinder, in Katharine-wheel-
 Alley, Whitechapel.
 Mr. John Palmer, of Bristol.
 Mr. Thomas Palmer, of Broadstreet.
 Mr. Robert Paltock, Attorney at Law, in Enfield.
 Mr. William Pardo.
 Mr. Henry Parker, Merchant, in Bristol.
 Mr. Nicholas Parr, Engraver.
 Mr. Parry, of Conduit-Street.
 Mr. Samuel Parvish, Bookseller, in Guilford.
 Mr. Richard Partridge, of Tower-Hill.
 Mr. Resta Patching.
 Dr. John Pawson.
 Mr. Thomas Payne, Bookseller, in Bishopsgate-Street.
 Mr. John Pearson, of Bristol.
 Mr. John Pearson, of Lynn.
 Mr. William Pearson.
 Mr. Samuel Peach, Haberdasher, in Bristol.
 Mr. Richard Peake, Cripplegate.
 Mr. Samuel Peare, Merchant, in Bristol.
 Rev. Mr. Penwarne, M. A. Chaplain to the Iron-
 Mongers-Hospital.
 Hutton Perkins, Esq;
 ——— Perry, Esq;
 Mr. Richard Percival, Merchant, in Bristol.
 Mr. Richard, Perkins, Mercer, in Bristol.
 Dr. Peters, of St. James's-Place
 Mr. Elias Peun.
 Mr. Perrit, of York.
 Mr. Phillips.
 Mr. John Phillips, Doctors-Commons
 Mr. Phipps, Mercer, Cheap-side.
 Mr. William Pick, of the Isle of Wight.
 Benjamin Pindar, of Penryn, Esq;
 Mrs. Pitt, of Sarum.
 John Pigott, Esq; of Brockley, Somersetshire.
 Mr. John Pieman, Bristol.
 Mr. David Abineta Pimentel.
 John Pine, Esq; Blue-Mantle Pursuivant at Arms.
 Alured Pincke, Esq;
 Mr. Joseph Pidding, Attorney at Law, in Bristol.
 Mr. Benjamin Platt, in Bishopsgate-Street.
 Rev. Mr. Peter Plattell, of Enfield.
 Mr. Jonathan Plummell, of Norwich.
 Mr. Henry Plumptre, of Queen's-College, Cambridge.
 Mr. Potts.
 Mr. Joseph Portall, of Freefolk, Hants.
 Mr. Joseph Porter, Merchant, in London.
 Mr. Potter.
 Mr. John Pocock, Queen-Hitch
 Rev. Mr. Pope, of Corfe-Castle, Isle of Purbeck.
 John Potham, Esq; of Newport, Isle of Wight.
 Mr. James Poston, Leicester-Fields.
 Colonel Porteen.
 Mackworth Praed, Esq;

Thomas Pratt, Esq;
 Mr. Edward Price
 Mr. Francis Priest.
 Mr. Primate.
 ——— Proby, of the Inner-Temple, Esq;
 Mr. Richard Profler.
 Mr. Edmund Proudfoot
 Mr. Stephen Pue, of Yarmouth.
 Thomas Pulleyn, Esq; of Barley, Yorkshire.
 Publick Library, at Pocklington, Yorkshire.
 John Putland, Esq;
 Henry Pyc, of Knowling, Bedfordshire, Esq;
 Mr. Samuel Pye, Surgeon, Bristol.
 Mr. Richard Pyott.

Q.

MESS. Quinque, of the Royal-Exchange-Assu-
 rance-Office.

R.

THE Right Hon. the Earl of Radnor.
 The Right Hon. the Lady Raymond.
 Mr. William Randall, of Exeter.
 Rev. Mr. Ramsden.
 Mr. Ramsden, of Norwich.
 Mr. William Ramsay, of the Academy, at Bristol.
 Dr. George Randolph, M D of Bristol.
 Mr. Robert Rainsford, of Charter-house-Square.
 Mrs. Razer, of Laurence-Poultney-Lane.
 Captain John Read, of Bristol.
 Mr. John Read, of Bristol.
 Mr. Reading.
 Mr. William Reason.
 Mr. Loving Reddione, of the Isle of Wight
 Mr. William Reeve.
 Mr. Joseph Reynolds, Wine-Merchant of Bristol.
 Mr. William Rice, of Carmarthen.
 Lady Rich.
 Mr. Hofer Richardson.
 Mr. Arthur Richardson, Whitechapel
 Mr. Peter Richardson, Bartlett's-Buildings.
 Mr. John Rigby, of Manchester.
 Mr. John Rishiere, Distiller, in Spital-Fields.
 Mr. John Rivington, Bookseller, in London, 75 Sets.
 ——— Rokt, of Sarum, Esq;
 Mr. Roberts, of Garlick-Hithe.
 Mr. Henry Roberts, of the Isle of Wight.
 Mr. William Roberts, of York.
 Mr. Samuel Rhodes, Bookseller, of Plymouth.
 Mr. William Rogers, of Helston, Cornwall.
 Mr. John Rogers, of Lefkard, Cornwall.
 Mr. J. Rocque, Surveyor.
 Mr. John Robinson, of Fountain-Court, in the Strand.
 Mr. William Roffey.
 Mr. Kerrill Roffey,
 Mr. Rooke, of Coleman-Street.
 Henry Rowe, of Bloomsbury Square, Esq;
 Mr. William Russell, of Falmouth.
 Rev. Mr. Russell, of West-Wickham.
 Mr. Timothy Rutter.
 Mr. Thomas Ratty
 William Ryder, Esq;

S.

THE Right Hon. the Earl of Southampton.
 Rev. Mr. John Sampson.
 Mr. Sadler, of Pater Noster-Row.
 Mr. Samuel Savage.
 Mr. William Savage.

Mr.

LIST OF SUBSCRIBERS.

- Mr. Saunders.
 Rev. Mr. W. ~~Saunders~~
 Mr. ~~Thos.~~ Savours, Attorney at Law, Glamorgan-shire.
 Mr. Edward Say, Printer, in London.
 Mr. Andrew Saywell, Queen-street, Ches-pide.
 Mr. Robert Sayer, of Norwich.
 Mr. Edward Scriviner, of Guilford
 Mr. John Scrivner
 Mr. Scott, Stone-Mason.
 Mr. Jonathan Scott.
 Mr. Thomas Searle, Attorney at Law, at Newport, Isle of Wight.
 Rev. Mr. Samuel Seyer, Head-Master of the Grammar-School, Bristol.
 Mr. William Seede, Apothecary, in Bristol.
 Mr. Sedgwick.
 Dr. William Selbie, of Berwick.
 William Selwin, Esq; Merchant, in London.
 Colonel John Selwyn, Member of Parliament for the City of Gloucester.
 Mr. Sergeant.
 Mr. Charles Searle.
 Mr. Simon Shatford.
 Dr. Shaw.
 Mr. Shaw
 Mr. John Shebbeare, Chemist, in Bristol.
 Miss Fuster Shelton.
 Mr. Joseph Sheppard, of Sheffield.
 Mr. Shields.
 Mr. Samuel Shifner, of Fenchurch-Street.
 Mr. Richard Shipley.
 Mr. Thomas Shippey, of Basinghall-Street.
 Mr. Sydenham Shipway, Linen-Draper, in Bristol.
 The Hon. Sewallis Shirley, Esq; Member of Parliament for Brackley.
 Mr. Shrief, of Fenchurch-Street.
 Mr. Benjamin Simpson.
 Mr. John Simpson.
 Matthew Skinner, Esq; Chief-Justice of Chester.
 Rev Mr. Will. Smith, Rector of Christ Church, Bristol.
 Mr. Conrade Smith, Merchant, in Bristol,
 Mr. James Smith, in Bristol.
 Mr. Thomas Smith, Merchant, in Bristol.
 Mr. Richard Smith, Bristol.
 Mr. Charles Smith, Black-Fryars.
 Mr. Joseph Smith, Druggist.
 Mr. Christopher Smith, of Tower-Street.,
 Rev. Mr. Samuel Smith.
 Mr. Smith, Coal-Merchant, in Thames-Street.
 Mr. William Smyth, of Guilford.
 Mr. Snelling.
 Henry Snooke, Esq;
 Mr. John Snow.
 Stephen Soame, Esq;
 Mr. Charles Spendelow.
 Mrs. Spindler, of Gutter-Lane.
 Mr. William Spinige.
 Mr. Spooner, of Chancery-Lane.
 John Spranger, Esq; of Beaufort-Buildings.
 Ferdinand Springall, Esq;
 Rev. Mr. Squire.
 Mr. Tho. Stagg, Attorney at Law, in Red-Cross-Street.
 John Stainforth, of Grimstone, in Yorkshire, Esq;
 Mr. John Stair, of Sarum.
 Mr. John Stamford.
 Mr. William Staples, Merchant, in London.
 John Starke, Esq;
 Charles Stanley, Esq; of Cross-Hall.
 Mr. Benjamin Steele, Bishopsgate-Street.
 Mr. Robert Steele, 3 Seta.
 Mr. Charles Steer.
 Mr. James Steere.
 Mr. Thomas Steere.
 Mr. Richard Stephens.
 Mr. William Stephens, Linen-Draper, in Bristol.
 Edward Stephenlon, Esq;
 Mr. William Steppie. Leaden-Hall-Street.
 Mr. Doyly Stevens.
 Mr. George Stevens, of Poplar.
 Mr. Robert ~~Stevens~~.
 Captain ~~Stevenson~~.
 The Hon. James Stuart, Esq; Vice-Admiral of the Red, and Member of Parliament for Melcomb-Regis.
 The Rev. Dr. Stillingfleet
 Mr. Hugh Stirling, of Manchester.
 Mr. William Stone, of Sarum.
 Mr. John Stonehouse
 Mr. Samuel Stonehouse.
 Mr. John Stott, of Manchester
 Mr. Straton.
 Mr. John Stratton, of Bristol.
 Mr. Stubbs.
 Captain Sutton.
 Mr. Thomas Swain, of Leverington, near Wisbech.
 Mr. John Swaine, of Teddington.
 Mr. Thomas Swallow, of Hasleuton.
 Mr. Eusebius Sweet.
 Mr. Sweeting.
 Rev. Mr. Swinden.
 Samuel Swine, Esq; of Coanley, Yorkshire.
 Mr. Stephen Switzer, Seeds-Man, in Westminster-Hall.
 Captain William Swymer, of Bristol.
 The Rev Mr Thomas Symonds, Fellow of Trinity-College, Cambridge.
 Captain Samuel Symons.
- T
- HENRY Talbot, Esq;
 Mr. Samuel Tallowin, of Norwich.
 Mr. Tate.
 Mr. John Tanner.
 Mr. John ~~Tanner~~ in Fetter-Lane.
 John Taylor, Esq; of Fulforth, Yorkshire.
 Captain Taylor.
 Mr. Benjamin Taylor
 Mr. Henry Tash, Merchant, of London.
 John Tayler, of East-Sheen, Esq;
 Mr. John Taylor.
 Mr. Samuel Taylor, of Manchester.
 Mr. William Terry, of Sarum.
 Mr. John Thistleton.
 Mr. John Thomas.
 Mr. Kellom Thomlinson, Dancing-Master.
 Mr. John Thompson, Merchant, in Bristol.
 Mr. Thompson.
 Mr. Thomas Thornd.
 Mr. John Thornhill, Attorney at Law, of Bristol.
 Mr. Thomas Thorpe, of Manchester.
 Ralph Thrale, Esq; Member of Parl. for Southwark.
 Mr. Thornton, Attorney at Law, at Bradford in Yorksh.
 Captain Samuel Thornton.
 Mr. Thoroughgood.
 Mark Thurston, Esq; Master in Chancery.
 Mr. John Thurston, Attorney at Law, Bristol.
- b/2
- Mr.

A LIST of SUBSCRIBERS.

Mr John Timms.
 Mr. Shacey Till.
 The Rev. Mr. Chichester Tomkins.
 Francis Topham, of York, Esq;
 Marmaduke Tonstall, of Wickliff, in Yorkshire, Esq;
 The Right Hon Lady Viscountess Torrington.
 Mr. John Tonge, Merchant, in Bristol.
 Mr John Townshend, of Winchester-Street.
 Mr Robert Toller, of Stockport, Lancashire.
 Dr Tollof, Medecin à Paris.
 Mr. Michael Tovey.
 Mr William Tourle.
 Mr Alexander Townley, of Manchester.
 Mr. Benjamin Travers, of the Isle of Wight.
 Mr. Trent, Apothecary, in Bedford-Street, Holbourn.
 The Right Hon. the Lord Trevor.
 The Rev. Mr. Tringham, Head-Master of Lutton
 Schools, Herefordshire.
 Mr. Henry Trollop, Merchant, in London.
 The Rev. Mr. Troyte
 Mr. John Truland, at Laurence-Hill, Gloucestershire.
 John Tuckfield, Esq;
 Mr Thomas Twining, of Devereux-Court.
 Sir Roger Twisden, Bart Knight of the Shire for Kent.
 Mr. George Tyndale, Attorney at Law, in Bristol.
 Mr. John Tyler, at Bristol.

V.

C O L. Vachel, of Abington, near Cambridge.
 The Hon Edward Vernon, Esq; Vice-Admiral
 of the Red, and Member of Parliament for Ipswich.
 Mrs Vernon, of Cleveland-Court.
 Mr John Vere.
 Mr. Henry Voght, Merchant, in London.
 The Rev Mr. Voter, of Heddenham.
 Mr. Udney.
 Gent Unwin, of Mark-Lane, Esq;
 Mr William Upfold, in the Poultry.
 Mr. Richard Urry, of Lymington.

W.

M R. Edward Wade, Attorney, in Abchurch-Lane.
 Mr. Waldo, of Broad-Street
 Mr. Charles Wale.
 Mr. Wale.
 Mr. Isaac Waler, of Harleston.
 Mr. D. Wales, of Peterborough.
 Mr. Walker, of Weldrake, Yorkshire.
 Dr. Thomas Walker, Advocate, in Doctors-Commons.
 Mr. Thomas Waller.
 Mr. Richard Ward, of Norwich.
 Mr. James Ware, of Edmonton.
 Richard Warren, Esq; of the Red-Cliff, near Bristol,
 Somersetshire.
 Mr. William Walter.
 Mr. James Walton.
 Mr. John Ward.
 Mr. Ralph Ward, in Exchange-Alley.
 Lee Warner, of Walsingham in Norfolk, Esq;
 Richard Warner, of Woodford in Essex, Esq;
 Mr. William Warricke, of St. Austle.
 Mr. Waters.
 Mr. Watkins, in Newgate Street.
 Mr. Watton, of the Post-Office.
 Rev. Thomas Watts, M. A. Preacher to the Society
 of Lincoln's-Inn.
 Gabriel Wayne, Esq; of Hainebrooke, in Gloucestersh.
 Rev. Mr. Welton, M. A.

Mr. Roderick Webb.
 Mr. David Webber, of Cliff-Hydon, Devonshire.
 Mr. Webster, of Exchange-Alley.
 Mr. George Welbourne.
 Mr. Saunders Welch.
 Mr. Thomas Western, of Coleman-Street.
 Edward Weston, Esq;
 Mr. George Wheeler.
 Mr. John Whistler, Mercer in Bristol.
 Mr. John Whiston.
 Messrs. Whitaker and Hennington.
 Rev. Mr. White.
 Mr. Samuel White.
 Rev. Dr. White.
 Mr. Joseph White.
 Mr. Anthony Whitehead, Distiller in Bristol.
 Mr. John Whitehead.
 Richard Whitehead, of Bramshot, Esq;
 Mr. James Whitehead, Merchant in Bristol.
 Mr. Thomas Whitton, of Exeter.
 Edward Horfely Widderington, Esq;
 Mr. John Wight, of Guildford.
 Mr. Joseph Wight, of Thames-Street.
 Mr. Joseph Wilson, Surgeon, in Endsfield.
 Mr. Peter Wilder, of Bristol.
 Mr. Joseph Wilkinfon.
 Mr. James Wilkinfon, Bookfeller in Portsmouth.
 Mr. Wilkinfon
 Mr. Edward Willcocks, Merchant, of Bristol
 Rev. Mr. Williams, Prebendary of Peterborough
 Rev. Mr. Williams, of Jesus College, Oxford.
 Mr. John Williams, in Cox's-Square, Spittle-Fields
 Mr. Francis Williams, Attorney at Law, at Newport
 in the Isle of Wight.
 Rev. Mr. Williams, of Crowan, Cornwall.
 Richard Willouby, Esq; of Knoyle.
 Mr. Willy, Merchant, in London.
 Mr. Wilmer.
 The Right Rev the Lord Bishop of Winchester.
 Wadham Windham, Esq;
 William Windham, Esq;
 Mr. Freme Windowe, Apothecary, of Bristol.
 Mr. Helburn Wnthy.
 Mr. Wood.
 John Wood, Esq; of Boynton in Yorkshire
 Mr. Thomas Woodcock, of Cureden in Lancashire.
 Rev. Mr. Woodford.
 Mr. Thomas Woodford, of the Isle of Wight.
 Mr. Edward Woodrow.
 Thomas Worsley, Esq; of Hovingham, in Yorkshire.
 James Worsley, Esq; of Pilewel, Hants.
 Mr. William Woodward, of Yarmouth.
 Sir John Wray, Bart. of Sleningsford in Yorkshire.
 Mr. George Wright.
 Mr. Wright.
 Mr. William Wright, of the Temple.
 The Rev. Mr. Wyat, Vicar of Weltham, Essex.
 Mr. Alexander Wycherley.
 Miss Henrietta Wyndham, of Dinton.

Y.

M R. Robert Yefcombe, Attorney at Law at
 Bristol.
 Mr. Robert Young.

Z.

M R. John Zachary, of King Street.

T H E

T H E C O N T E N T S.

The INTRODUCTION.

OF the Rise and Progress of Navigation and Commerce in several Parts of the World. P. 1.

P A R T I B O O K I

<i>VOYAGES to the South-East and East Indies, till the Europeans settled there.</i>	9.
<i>The first Voyages of the Portuguese to the East Indies.</i>	ibid.
CHAP. I. <i>Voyages and Discoveries of the Portuguese along the Coast of Africa, as far as Cape Verde : Collected from de Faria y Sousa, Juan de Barros, Antonio Galvam, and other Authors.</i>	10.
CHAP. II. <i>Discoveries of the Portuguese continued from Cape Verde, as far as Cabo de Buena Esperanza, or the Cape of Good Hope : From the same Authors.</i>	15.
CHAP. III. <i>Portuguese sent to discover the East Indies by Land, with a more particular Account of the first Settlements made in Mandinga, Guinea, and Kongo.</i>	18.
CHAP. IV. <i>Vasco de Gama's Voyage to India in 1497, being the first performed by the Portuguese round Africa.</i>	21.
CHAP. V. <i>The Voyage of Pedro Alvarez Cabral, in 1500, being the second of the Portuguese to India. Taken chiefly from Castanneda.</i>	40.
CHAP. VI. <i>The Voyage of Juan de Nueva ; being the third made by the Portuguese to the East Indies. Taken chiefly from Castanneda.</i>	49.
CHAP. VII. <i>The second Voyage of Vasco de Gama in 1502 ; being the fourth made by the Portuguese to the East Indies.</i>	50.
CHAP. VIII. <i>Voyages and Transactions of the Portuguese in India, from 1503 to 1507, with the Exploits of Pacheco. Extracted from Castanneda, de Barros, and de Faria y Sousa.</i>	54.
CHAP. IX. <i>Exploits of the Portuguese, in the Year 1507, under Don Francisco de Almeyda, first Vice-Roy of India. Extracted from the same Authors.</i>	58.
CHAP. X. <i>Continuation of the Exploits of the Portuguese, under the Vice-Royship of Almeyda, from 1508 to 1510.</i>	64.
CHAP. XI. <i>The Exploits of Albuquerque, while Vice-Roy of India, from 1510 to 1516.</i>	71.
CHAP. XII. <i>A brief Account of the Portuguese Transactions in India, from 1516 to 1521, under the Government of Lope Soarez.</i>	76.
CHAP. XIII. <i>Transactions and Discoveries of the Portuguese, from 1521 to 1537.</i>	79.
CHAP. XIV. <i>Continuation of Portuguese Transactions and Discoveries, from 1537 to 1542.</i>	83.
CHAP. XV. <i>An Account of the Portuguese Possessions, from the Cape of Good Hope to China.</i>	85.
CHAP. XVI. <i>The Voyage of Soleyman Bahá, from Suez to India, in his Expedition against the Portuguese at Diu, in 1537. Written by an Officer of the Venetian Gallies, (who was pressed into the Turkish Service) and now first translated from the Italian.</i>	88.
CHAP. XVII. <i>The Siege of Diu, by Soleyman Bahá of Egypt, in 1539.</i>	102.
CHAP. XVIII. <i>The Voyage of Don Stefano de Gama, from Goa to Suez. in 1540, with Intent to burn the Turkish Gallies in that Port. Written by Don Juan de Castro, then a Captain in the Fleet : Afterwards Governor and Vice-Roy of India. Translated from the Portuguese, and abbreviated.</i>	107.
CHAP. XIX. <i>A Description of the Sea of Kolzum, commonly called the Arabic Gulf, or Red-Sea : From Abú Nedá's Geography.</i>	130.
CHAP. XX. <i>The second Siege of Diu, by Mahmúd King of Kambaya, in 1545, under the Government of Don Juan de Castro.</i>	132.

The CONTENTS. B O O K II.

T HE first Voyages of the English to Guinea, and the East Indies.	P. 132
CHAP. I. The second Voyage to Barbary in the Year 1552, by Captain Thomas Windham. Written by Mr. James Thomas, the Captain's Page.	140.
CHAP. II. A Voyage to Guinea and Benin, in 1553, by Thomas Windham, and Antonio Anes Pinateado, Captains.	141.
CHAP. III. The second Voyage to Guinea, in 1554, by Captain John Lok. Written by one of the principal Pilots.	144.
CHAP. IV. The first Voyage made to the Coast of Guinea, by William Towrison, Merchant of London, in 1555.	150.
CHAP. V. The second Voyage of Mr. Towrison to the Coast of Guinea, and the Castle del Mina, in 1556.	162.
CHAP. VI. The third and last Voyage of Mr. Towrison to the Coast of Guinea, and the Castle del Mina, in 1557.	160.
CHAP. VII. Voyages to Guinea in 1561 and 1562, 1564 and 1566.	176.
CHAP. VIII. The Voyage of Captain George Fenner to the Islands of Cape Verde, in 1566, with three Ships and a Pinnace. Written by Walter Wien.	185.
CHAP. IX. The Voyage of Thomas Stephens in the Portuguese Fleet to Goa, in 1579.	191.
CHAP. X. Containing some Naval Expeditions, and Cruizing Voyages, against the Spaniards and Portuguese.	194.
CHAP. XI. Two Voyages to Benin beyond Guinea, in 1588, and 1590. Written by James Welsh, chief Master in the Voyage.	199.
CHAP. XII. A Cruizing Voyage, by the Right Honourable George Earl of Cumberland, to the Azores, in 1589. Written by Mr. Edward Wright, Mathematician and Engineer.	206.
CHAP. XIII. The Fight between the Revenge Man of War, commanded by Sir Richard Grenville, and fifteen Armadas of the King of Spain, in 1591. Written by Sir Walter Raleigh, Knight.	216.
CHAP. XIV. A Cruizing Voyage to the Azores in 1591, with a Fleet of London Ships, under the Command of Captain Robert Flicke; designed as Supplies to Lord Thomas Howard. Written by the Captain himself. To which is added, an Account of the West India Fleet, expected in Spain the same Year; and the Number of its Ships lost or taken.	221.
CHAP. XV. The Exploits of the English in several Expeditions, and Cruizing Voyages, from 1589 to 1592. Extracted from John Huighen Van Linschoten's Voyage from Goa to Portugal.	225.
CHAP. XVI. A Voyage to the East Indies in the Year 1591, (being the first performed by the English to those Parts) begun by Captain George Raymond, and finished by Captain James Lancaster. Written from the Report of Edmund Baker, Lieutenant of the Bonaventure.	235.
CHAP. XVII. The Voyages of Richard Rainolds and Thomas Dassel to the Rivers of Senega and Gambia, adjoining on Guinea, 1591.	242.
CHAP. XVIII. A Cruizing Voyage to the Azores, in 1592, by Sir John Burrough, Knight, in order to intercept the East India Carak.	245.
CHAP. XIX. Two remarkable Sea-Fights, one in 1592, wherein two Assogue Ships were taken; the other in 1593, when a large East India Carak was burned.	249.
CHAP. XX. The unfortunate Voyage of Captain Benjamin Wood, toward the East Indies, in 1596.	252.
CHAP. XXI. A Voyage to the East Indies, in 1598, by Captain John Davis, who went Pilot in a Dutch Ship. Written by himself.	254.

B O O K III.

F IRST Voyages of the English to the East Indies, set forth by the Company of Merchants.	262.
CHAP. I. The Voyage of Captain James Lancaster, in the Year 1600, being the first made on Account of the East India Company.	ibid.
CHAP. II. The Voyage of Captain (afterwards Sir) Henry Middleton, in 1604, being the second set forth by the East India Company.	279.
CHAP. III. An Account of Java, and the first Settlement of the English at Bantam. With a Journal of Occurrences there; particularly in Regard to what passed between them and the Dutch, as well as the Natives, from 1602, to 1605, inclusively. Extracted from the larger Relation, written by Edmund Scot, chief Factor.	284.
CHAP. IV. The Voyage of Sir Edward Michellburne, to Bantam, in 1604.	306.
CHAP. V. The Voyage of Captain William Keeling, in 1607, to Bantam and Banda; being the third set out by the India Company. Written by the Captain himself, and abbreviated.	312.
CHAP.	

The CONTENTS.

- CHAP. VI. *The Voyage of Captain David Middleton to Bantam, and the Molukkos, in 1607.* P. 332.
- CHAP. VII. *The Voyage of Captain Alexander Sharpey, in 1608; being the fourth set out by the East India Company. Written by Captain Robert Coverte.* 336.
- CHAP. VIII. *A brief Account of the same Voyage of the Ascension. Written by Thomas Jones.* 344.
- CHAP. IX. *The Voyage of Captain Richard Rowles to Priaman, in the Union, being a Continuation of the fourth Voyage.* 348.
- CHAP. X. *The Voyage of Captain David Middleton to Java and Banda, in 1609; being the fifth Voyage set forth by the Company. Extracted from a Letter written by himself to the Merchants.* 351.
- CHAP. XI. *The Voyage of Sir Henry Middleton to the Red-Sea, and Surat, in 1610; being the sixth set forth by the East India Company. Written by Sir Henry himself.* 360.
- CHAP. XII. *The Journal of Captain Nicholas Downton, Lieutenant-General, in the same Voyage of Sir Henry Middleton.* 390.
- CHAP. XIII. *The Voyage of Captain Anthony Hippon to the Coast of Koromandel, Bantam, and Siam, in 1611; being the seventh set forth by the East India Company. Written by Nathaniel Marten, Master's Mate.* 429.
- CHAP. XIV. *The Journal of Mr. Peter Williamson Floris, Cape-Merchant in the same Voyage of Captain Hippon. Translated from the Dutch, and contracted.* 465.
- CHAP. XV. *The Voyage of Captain Samuel Castleton to Priaman, in 1612. Written by John Castleton, Master.* 446.
- CHAP. XVI. *The Voyage of Captain John Saris to the Red-Sea, the Molukkos, and Japan, in 1611, being the eighth Voyage set forth by the East India Company. Collected out of the Captain's own Journal.* 451.
- CHAP. XVII. *Occurrences at Bantam, and other Parts of the East Indies, from October 1605, till October 1609; with an Account of the Marts and Commodities of those Parts. By Captain John Saris.* 496.
- CHAP. XVIII. *A Relation of what pass'd at Firando in the General's Absence, at the Emperor's Court. Written by Richard Cocks, Cape-Merchant.* 509.
- CHAP. XIX. *Several Particulars relating to the Affairs of Japan, from 1614 to 1620, extracted from the Letters of Mr. Cocks. To which is added, the Substance of two Letters from Mr. Sayer; and a Letter from the Emperor of Japan, to the Prince of Orange.* 517.
- CHAP. XX. *The Voyage of William Adams, Pilot, to Japan, with his Adventures and Promotions there. Written by himself.* 525.

B O O K IV.

- VOYAGES to several Parts of Africa, and the Islands adjacent; with particular Descriptions of the respective Countries, and their Inhabitants.* 532.
- CHAP. I. *A Description of the Canary Islands and Madera, with their remarkable Fruits and Commodities. By Thomas Nichols. To which is added, a farther Account of each, by Way of Supplement from later Authors.* *ibid.*
- CHAP. II. *The Voyage of Aluise da Cada Mosto, in 1482, along the Coast of Africa, as far as Rio Grande. Written by himself. Translated from the Italian.* 572.
- CHAP. III. *The second Voyage of Aluise da Cada Mosto to the Coast of Africa, in 1456, in which the Cape de Verde Islands were discovered. Written by himself.* 592.
- CHAP. IV. *The Voyage of Captain Piedro de Cantra, a Portuguese, to Sierra Leona. Written by Aluise da Cada Mosto.* 597.
- CHAP. V. *Account of a Voyage to the Islands of the Canaries, Cape de Verde, and Barbados, in 1721. By Captain George Roberts. Written by himself.* 599.
- CHAP. VI. *A Description of the Cape de Verde Islands.* 627.

E R R A T A

Page 5. Line 36. for *Suer*, read *Soes*. P. 6. l. 8. f. fifth, r. third; l. 37. f. 1592. r. 1492. P. 31. l. 14. f. Ternacabal, r. Terzanabal. P. 19. l. 9. f. Ormaz, r. Ormuz. P. 22. l. 33. and 45. f. Mand, r. Bay. P. 23. l. 9. f. November, r. Decem-
ber. P. 41. l. 26. r. not heard of for some Time. P. 81. l. 33. f. Thousand, r. Hundred. P. 85. l. 38. *ditto*, Botello's sur-
prizing Voyage, &c. P. 99. l. 56. f. Mukka, r. Mecca. P. 104. l. 22. f. Vescencelos, r. Vistconcelos. P. 112. l. 34. f. Dal-
haka, r. Dallahak. P. 124. l. 42. f. p. 38, r. p. 88; l. 47. f. Mahomet, r. Mahomet. P. 128. l. 22. r. Voyage to the Coast
of. P. 174. l. 31. f. 1605-4, r. 1602-3. P. 280. l. 28. f. we, r. he. P. 321. l. 46. f. *Amn*, r. killed; l. 50. f. are, r. Ja-
panese. P. 330. l. 10. f. Honethes, r. Honesty. P. 332. l. 22 and 34. f. Saldania, r. Saldajina. P. 333. l. 47. f. very Wa-
ter, r. very good Water. P. 337. l. 36. f. lie, r. lies. P. 344. l. 36. r. They overtake a Ship of *Dm*, l. 37. The Captain
tricked at Aden. P. 393. to 402. f. 1612, r. 1610; from 402. to 408. f. 1613, r. 1611. P. 425. l. 37. f. a Snakes, r. Ser-
Snakes. P. 435. l. 13. f. Pataney, r. Patane. P. 448. l. 58. r. Baikala. P. 464. l. 45. after Clove, put a full Stop, l. 17.
del and P. 543. l. 31. f. Sect. III. r. Sect. IV. P. 547. l. 30. f. Sect IV r. Sect V. P. 571. l. 56. f. which was, r. which
River was. P. 574. l. 41. f. defrayed the, r. defrayed by the. P. 600. l. 40. f. wirlun, r. with, *del*. P. 624. l. 2. f. Balu-
lier, l. 31. r. das Bharhas. P. 663. l. 55. f. was, r. were.

A LIST of the CHARTS and CUTS, with DIRECTIONS to the Binder for placing them, and REFERENCES to the Pages where they are mentioned.

		<i>To face Page</i>	<i>Mentioned on Page</i>
	FRONTISPIECE.		
CHART I.	A CHART of the Western Coast of <i>Africa</i> , from the Straights of <i>Gibraltar</i> to eleven Degrees of North Latitude, including the <i>Canary</i> and <i>Cape Verde</i> Isles.		10, &c.
II.	A CHART of the Western Coast of <i>Africa</i> , from the twelfth Degree of North Latitude to the eleventh, South, with the adjacent Islands.		138, &c.
III.	A CHART of the Western Coast of <i>Africa</i> , from the eleventh Degree of South Latitude to the Cape of <i>Good Hope</i> .		235, &c.
IV.	A CHART of the Eastern Coast of <i>Africa</i> , from the Cape of <i>Good Hope</i> to Cape del <i>Guda</i> .		254, &c.
V.	A CHART of all the known Islands off the Coast of <i>Zenjibar</i> and <i>Madagaskar</i> , lying in the Way to <i>India</i> .		264, &c.
VI.	A CHART of the Eastern Coast of <i>Africa</i> , from the thirteenth Degree of South to the sixteenth Degree of North Latitude.		336, &c. 452, &c.
VII.	A CHART of the Coast of <i>Arabia</i> , the <i>Red Sea</i> , and the <i>Persian Gulph</i> .		107, &c. 360, &c.
VIII.	A CHART of the Coast of <i>Persia</i> , <i>Guzurat</i> , and <i>Malabar</i> .		451, &c.
N. B. These eight Charts to follow each other at the End of the Volume.			
PLATE I.	THE King of <i>Kochin</i> riding on an Elephant, attended by his <i>Nayres</i> .	46	32, &c.
	SMALL <i>Indian Vessels</i> used on the Coast of <i>Malabar</i> .		
II.	SEA-WEEDS.		
	FLYING-FISH Chase.	194	193, &c.
III.	THE Flying-Fish, and its Enemies of the Air and Water.	194	192, &c.
IV.	A PLAN of the Island of <i>Teneriffe</i> .		
	A VIEW of the Town and Road of <i>Santa Cruz</i> .	539	538, &c.
V.	TWO VIEWS of the Pike of <i>Teneriffe</i> .	539	538, 547
VI.	A PLAN of the Island of <i>Madera</i> .		
	THE Dragon Tree.	557	557
VII.	A VIEW of the Road and Town of <i>Funchal</i> , the Capital of <i>Madera</i> .	558	557, 565
VIII.	A MAP of the Cape de <i>Verde</i> Islands.	676	358, &c.
IX.	A PLAN of <i>Porto Grande</i> Bay, in the Island of <i>St. Vincent</i> .	672	599 to the End, 672, &c.
X.	A PROSPECT of the Fort, Town, and Bay of <i>Mozambik</i> .	24	24, 25
XI.	A PROSPECT of the Island of <i>Ormus</i> .	75	74, &c.
XII.	A PROSPECT of the City of <i>Diu</i> .	132	69, 93, 102, 132
XIII.	THE Island of <i>Mayo</i> .		638
	THE Island of <i>St. Jago</i> .	656	650
	THE Harbour of <i>Praya</i> in <i>St. Jago</i> .		655
XIV.	A MAN and Woman of the Island of <i>St. John</i> .	666	664, &c.
XV.	A VIEW of the Island of <i>Fuego</i> .		
	A PROSPECT of the Harbour of <i>St. Vincent</i> .	672	657 672

T H E

I N T R O D U C T I O N

Of the RISE and PROGRESS of NAVIGATION and COMMERCE in several Parts of the WORLD.

*The Author's
View.*

IT being our Design to give a Collection of all the remarkable Voyages that have been made of late Ages, whether on the Score of Discovery, Conquest, Trade or Observation, it may not be amiss to premise some general Account of Navigation and Commerce in several Countries down to the present: Wherein particular Regard will be had to their Progress after the Fall of the *Roman* Empire; their Declension in *Europe* till the Invention of the Compass; and lastly, the great Improvements and Advantages they have received since that Discovery, beyond what they did, or possibly could attain to, in former Ages.

*Useless Re-
searches.*

IN this Attempt, we shall not follow the Example of the generality of Authors, who are for carrying their Disquisitions, not only as far back as the Flood, but even beyond it. Because it seems to be throwing away Time to push our Inquiries into Ages, concerning whose Affairs we have no Account that can be depended on; and about which, consequently, all that can be said, must be pure Conjecture. Neither shall we undertake to settle what relates to the Migrations of Man-

kind, and peopling of Countries, a Labour no less vain than the former^a: Nor trouble ourselves with examining how many Banks of Oars there were in the *Greek* and *Roman* Ships of War, or in what Order they were disposed; about which, many of the Learned have spent so much useless Pains: Because these are Matters, which in our Conception, have little or no Relation to the present Design; and if they had any, are not worth the Labour of Inquiry, considering that the Lights afforded by History, are so very obscure, that the Moderns are divided into various Opinions, which are all so different and liable to Objection, that they would serve only to puzzle and disgust the Reader, instead of satisfying his Curiosity^b.

THAT the Use of Boats as well as Rafts, was very early, we can readily agree, because Man-kind could not travel or remove their Stations, or migrate with their Families and Goods, without such Helps in passing Rivers, or carry on their little Traffick up and down them. They were necessary also for fishing along the Sea Coasts; and, venturing so far, they might be tempted to row a little way along the Shore to sell their Fish,

*No large
Ships in early
Times.*

^a They who would be farther satisfied, with regard to this Matter, may consult the *Universal History*, Vol. I. p. 156. As the Account given in *Genesis*, of the peopling of the Earth, is the only one that hath been transmitted down to us, and the Names of Places mentioned therein so different from what they are at present, it is in vain (as the Author observes) to pretend to fix the Seats of most of the Nations at this Time of Day, with any sort of Certainty; besides, the Mosaical Account is so far from pointing out the Original of all Nations, that his Migrations extend only to the Countries neighbouring on *Syria*: Eastward, at farthest to *India*; Westward, to *Greece*; Northward, to the Countries between the *Caspian* and *Euxine* Seas; and Southward to *Nubia*. So that either the World was not peopled farther, which is scarce to be presumed, (since *China* is allowed to be inhabited immediately after the Flood, if not before) or those were all the Countries, the peopling of which came to the Knowledge of *Moses*.

^b To be convinced thereof, the Reader need only look into the Introductions to *Churchill's* and *Harris's* Collections of Voyages and Travels, especially the latter, where every thing relating to this Subject, seems to be raked together; and the several Writers upon the same brought in, tediously disputing against each other, with a View, it should seem, rather to shew the Author's Reading, than to inform his Readers.

RISE and PROGRESS of

and by degrees, to barter for other things: But as long Voyages required large and strong Vessels, and Nations must have grown powerful by Land, before they could think of foreign Commerce by Sea, therefore we can hardly suppose large Ships to have been built, or long Voyages undertaken, before some considerable Kingdoms or States were founded, such as the *Chinese*, *Persian*, *Affyrian*, or *Babylonian*. But of these ancient Monarchies, the Accounts transmitted to us, are very imperfect and uncertain. The *Chinese* pretend to have been powerful very early by Sea, and great Fleets are mentioned by Authors, as belonging to the other Nations. *Semiramis*, Queen of *Affyria*, particularly is reported by some of the *Greek* Writers, to have had a Fleet of 1500 Sail. But these Relations may be suspected. The *Greeks*, after having destroyed all the Records of the *Babylonians* and *Persians*, whom they conquered under *Alexander*, found themselves obliged to invent Fables of them, in order to supply the Loss of their History.

Or till Empires were founded.

HOWEVER, that the maritime Powers of *Asia* had their Fleets in the flourishing Times of their Empires, and traded to *India* that Fountain of Wealth, from the earliest Ages, is more than probable, from *Solomon's* fitting out a Fleet at *Ezion Gaber*, in the *Red-Sea*, which traded to *Ophir*; and though it is not possible to determine where *Ophir* was really situate, whether in any Part of *India*, or only on some Part of the *Arabian* or *African* Coast; yet no Doubt ought to be made, that the Voyage to *India* in those Days, was as easily performed, and much frequented, as it had been at any Period since then, till the Time that the Mariner's Compass came in Use. Besides, it is more likely, that *India* should afford a rich Trade in those early Ages than *Africa*, which in most Parts, to this Day, is neither populous, civilized, nor well cultivated, as *India* always was; and, if it yielded Ivory and Gold, must needs have been destitute of such curious Manufactures and Furniture, as we are told were brought from *Ophir*.

Phœnicians the first Navigators.

IN fitting out this Fleet, *Solomon* was assisted by the King of *Tyre*, whose Subjects, the *Phœnicians*, were the first Nation that made any Figure in these Parts of the World by Sea. They traded, it may be presumed, to all Parts of the *Mediterranean*, where the Prospect of Commerce led them; and urged, by Thirst of Gain, even passed the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and traffick'd as far as the *British* Isles for Tin. 'Tis very likely, that they passed also to the Southward of the Streights, along the Coast of *Africa*, in quest of Commerce; and that they settled Colonies or Factories, in several Places, for the Convenience of carrying it on to the best Advantage.

THAT the *Egyptians* had Fleets, and carried on Commerce, is very probable, even before the Time of *Solomon*, who possibly was moved by their Example, to trade to *Ophir*. But in that and other distant Voyages, in all Likelihood, they employed the *Phœnicians*, who seem to have been the most famous Ship Builders, as well as expert and venturous Navigators of those Ages: For we find *Pharaoh Neco*, and other Kings, sending them by Way of the *Red-Sea*, to make Discoveries of *Africa*; round which, it is reported, that they sailed, returning to *Egypt* through the *Mediterranean*. And that they actually performed the Voyage, appears near to a Demonstration, from the very Circumstance related by them, which to *Herodotus* seemed incredible, viz. That in their Passage round *Africa*, they had the Sun for a long Time to the North of them: A well known Fact to all who at present sail to the *East Indies*. Whether the Trade of *Egypt* declined, and in what Degree, upon the successive Conquests of the *Babylonians* and *Persians*, does not appear from History.

Commerce of the Egyptians.

THE *Greeks* built Ships soon after they had formed themselves into States, as may be presumed, from the Fleets they sent to the Siege of *Troy*. They were obliged likewise to increase their Naval Power, in order to oppose the *Persians*, who frequently invaded their Coasts with Fleets, navigated by *Phœnicians*: But 'tis probable, they had no Ships of any considerable Bulk, nor did extend their Commerce far, till the Time of *Alexander*; who having conquered the Empire of the *Persians*, the *Greeks* succeeded to their Power by Sea, as well as Land. They surpassed the others far in the Size of their Ships; and had large Fleets in the *Indian* Seas, as well as the *Mediterranean*. The *Ptolemys*, who reigned in *Egypt*, revived, or at least greatly improved Trade; opening a Communication with the *Indies*, by Way of the *Red-Sea*, or *Arabic* Gulf, where *Berenice*, supposed to be the present *Kasir*, was founded for that Purpose. To this Port were brought the principal Merchandizes of *Arabia*, *India*, *Persia*, and *Ethiopia*, (under which Name may be included, all the then known Parts of *Africa*, to the South of *Egypt*) from thence they were conveyed to *Coptos*, but three Days Journey distant, and so down the *Nile* to *Alexandria*, near the Mouth of that River in the *Mediterranean* Sea; from whence, chiefly, all *Europe* was supplied with the Commodities of the East.

Of the Greeks;

WHILST the *Greeks* ruled by their Fleets in the Eastern Parts of the *Mediterranean*, the *Carthaginians*, a Colony of *Phœnicians*, were powerful at Sea in the Western Part, and even traded without the Streights. *Scylax Cariandensis*, in the

Of the Carthaginians and Romans.

Beginning of his *Periplus*, observes, that they had many Emporiums to the North thereof; and, probably, they had others to the South, since *Hanno*, in his Voyage, (said to have been made round *Africa* ^a) founded several Cities, and settled Colonies on the Western Coasts. This Nation, by their frequent Invasions of *Italy*, and Depredations committed on its Merchants Ships, at length obliged the *Romans* to have Recourse to a Naval Armament in their own Defence; and these latter, having, in Process of Time, subdued the *Greeks*, as well as the *Carthaginians*, became possessed both of their Commerce and Power by Sea, in Consequence of such Conquest.

It declines in Europe.

THE Commerce and Naval Power of the *Roman* Empire continued in a flourishing State, so long as it remained in one Body: But from the Time of its Division into two Parts, it began to decline; till at length the Western Empire, being destroyed by the *Goths*, *Vandals*, and other Northern Nations, who came down upon it, Trade began to be quite neglected in the Western Parts of *Europe*; and soon after, the *Arabs*, erroneously called *Saracens*, having, in a surprisingly short Space of Time, over-ran a great Part of the Eastern Empire, and torn from it *Egypt*, (that grand Canal of Trade with *India*) Commerce in *Europe* began at once to languish, and, by Degrees, to become in a Manner extinct.

Commerce of the Arabs,

THESE *Arabs*, who at first despised Riches as much as Learning, in Time, became enamoured with both. They not only opened the Ports of the *Levant* and *Egypt*, (with the Canals, which, for many Ages before, had been stopped up) but, what was of vastly more Consequence to them, carried on a Trade from *Arabia* and *Persia* (of which they were Masters) to *India*, and even *China* itself, chiefly from the Port of *Siráf*, to the West of *Gomrûn*. And it may be presumed, that this Trade continued to flourish during the Course of their Empire: In which Interval, they extended not only their Commerce, but Conquests and Settlements Eastward, along the Coasts of both the Peninsulas of *India*, as well as many of the chief *Indian* Islands; and Southward, along the Eastern Shores of *Africa* beyond *Sofala*, in above twenty Degrees of South Latitude, although their Ships were of a very slender Fabrick; (being made only of Planks, fastened together with Ropes of Cayro, or Coco Husks, and scarce any Iron at all in them) and, consequently, not able to endure Storms, or fit for sailing on the main Ocean.

T

And the Indians.

WHATEVER Effect the Division of the *Arabian* Empire, like the *Roman*, into Eastern and Western, under two *Khalifas*, (the one of

Egypt, the other of *Baghdád*, about three hundred Years after *Mohammed*) might have had on Commerce, yet it did not wholly decline, but continued to be carried on in the Eastern Part, under the several Dynasties of *Persians*, *Turks*, and *Tartars*, which succeeded each other upon the Extinction of the *Khalifah* of *Baghdád*, and though it was not so briskly carried on in the Western *Khalifat*, (which included *Syria*, *Egypt*, and Part of *Africa*,) by Reason of the continual Wars and Changes which affected that Part more than the other, yet it did not wholly cease, being kept up by Means of the Fleets that brought the Pilgrims from all Parts to *Mekka*: Which was always a grand Mart for Traffick, as well as Devotion, among the *Mohammedans*. In short, when the *Portuguese* first entered the *Indian* Seas, they not only found a surprising Number of Shipping, as well as great Intercourse of Trade, between the Inhabitants all along the Eastern Coast of *Africa*, *Arabia*, *Persia*, *India*, and the Islands; but what seemed more to be wondered at, (and doubtless contributed much to that flourishing State of Trade) their Pilots had the Use both of the Compass and Charts.

The Compass not invented by the Arabs.

FROM hence, many Authors have concluded, that the *Arabs* were the Inventors of those useful Instruments: But those who have looked closer into the Matter, make no Difficulty to assert, that they received the Knowledge of them from the *Europeans*, before the *Portuguese* found out the Way to *India* by Sea. And this Opinion is grounded on pretty cogent Reasons, drawn from the Silence of the Oriental Writers, with Regard to any such Discovery, or the directive Property of the Magnet; from the *Asiatics* never sailing by the Latitude, the Unfitness of their Ship, for sailing on the Ocean, and the like ^b. The *Arabs* were no great Improvers, adding very little to what they found in the Writings of the *Greeks*, whose Learning they cultivated: Nor had they any great Occasion to carry on their Commerce by Sea, since the Commodities of the neighbouring Countries Eastward, were brought into their Dominions by Land, as conveniently as by their Ports. They bordered Eastward upon *India*, whose Merchandizes found an easy Entrance through *Kábul*, and other frontier Cities; and to the North, they were possessed of *Great Bokhária*, between which and *Katay*, (including Part of *Tartary*, and the Northern Provinces of *China*) there was an Intercourse by *Karawáns*, which was much improved in the Time of *Jinghis Khán*, and his Successors, who brought all those Countries under their Subjection.

^a *Plin. Hist. Nat. lib. 2. c. 67*

See Renaudot anciennes Relat. des Ind. p. 290.

Or by the
Chinese.

As to the Claim, which the *Chinese* lay to the Knowledge of the Compass, ever since the Time of their Emperor *Whang-ti*^a, above 3000 Years before Christ, it must be looked on as chimerical; since it is scarce possible, that they should ever have lost so useful a Secret, had it once been known to them. It may be concluded therefore, that the first Knowledge they ever had of the Compass, was received from the *Europeans*, tho' they might have found such Instrument in Use with them, on their first Arrival in *China*.

Attempts to
revive Com-
merce in Eu-
rope.

AFTER the Fall of the Western Roman Empire, the Countries of *Europe*, to the West of *Greece*, were so distracted, for several Ages, with the Wars and Invasions of the *Vandals*, *Goths*, and other Northern Nations, that they had no Time to think of foreign Commerce, had the Way to *India*, thro' *Egypt*, been open to them, as it was formerly. However, the maritime Nations still carried on a Trade among themselves, under many Interruptions. The *English*, at sundry Times, had very large Fleets, as well for War as Commerce; and traded into the *Mediterranean*, as well as the *Baltick*, where the *Hans Towns* engrossed almost all the Trade of the North.

Interrupted
by the Nor-
man Inva-
sions.

CHARLEMAGNE intended to have restored Commerce in the *Mediterranean*, but the Troubles that ensued after his Death, threw all Things into Confusion again. In this Declension of the State, the Northern Nations, under the Name of *Normans*, renewed their Invasions, and in large Fleets attacked the more Southern Countries, particularly *France*. After ravaging its Coasts, and settling in *Normandy*, they fell with no less Fury on the Coasts of *Spain*, which they plundered; and entering the Streights of *Gibraltar*, conquered a considerable Part of the Kingdom of *Naples*, with the whole Island of *Sicily*, committing infinite Murders and Depredations, both by Sea and Land.

And by the
Crusades.

THE next great Interruption to Commerce was, the *Crusades*, formed by the popish Powers, against the *Mohammedans* abroad, and then against the Heretics at home. These execrable Wars, sanctified with the Name of *Holy*, kept all the Southern Parts of *Europe*, and the Western *Khalifat*, in a Ferment, for above a hundred Years together. The Confusion was increased in *Asia*, by the terrible Irruption which followed of the *Moguls* and *Tartars*, under *Jingh'z Khán*; and by the Wars which sprung up among the Successors of *Saláh add'n* (or *Saladin*) in *Egypt*, *Syria*, and the neighbouring Countries Eastward.

Carried on by
the Genoese,

THE *Genoese* and *Venetians* were the only People of *Europe*, who, during this long Interval

of Distraction, thought of foreign Trade, or at least, attempted to carry it on. The first taking Advantage of the weak Condition of the latter *Greek Empire*, in the Time of the *Croisade*, in the thirteenth Century ravaged the *Archipelago*, seized some of the Islands, penetrated into the *Black Sea*, and took from the *Greeks* several Cities on it's Coasts, the chief of which was *Theodosia*, (in the *Taurica Kheronesus*, or *Krim*) which they rebuilt, and called *Kassa*, from whence they carried on a Trade with *Mingrelia*, *Trebizond*, and other Parts of that Sea. They were in Possession of *Pera*, one of the Suburbs of *Constantinople* itself.

THEIR Rivals, the *Venetians*, made likewise several Conquests from the *Greeks*, and long contended with the *Genoese* for the Sovereignty of the inner Seas, which they obtained at last. They had their Consuls at *Kassa*, whose Trade, as it does at present, consisted in Salt, Honey, Wax, Fish and Caveare; but fixed their principal Mart at *Tána*, or *Dona*, a City then at the Mouth of the River *Don*, or *Tanais*, where it falls into the *Palus Mæotis*, but now ruined. Hither were brought all the Spices, and other valuable Commodities of the *Indies*, which were conveyed by Way of the *Indus*, the *Oxus*, (or *Amú*) and the *Caspian Sea*, to *Astrakbán*, then called *Citrakban*^b.

And Vene-
tians, during
that Inter-
val

WHEN the Goods, which came by the *Caspian Sea*, arrived at *Astrakbán*, Part were sent by the *Volga*, and other Rivers, to supply the two great Marts for Trade, which then subsisted in *Russia*. One was the ancient City of *Ladoga*, from whence they were conveyed by the Lake of that Name, and Gulf of *Finland*, to *Wishuy*, in *Gothland*, formerly famous on Account of it's great Commerce; the other great Staple of Trade, was near the City *Tjördyn* on the *Kama*, which, from the Country where it was situate, bore the Name of *Great Permia*. From thence, the *Indian* Commodities being carried by the River *Pitziora* to the Ocean, were there shipped and sent along the Shore of *Norway*, and, perhaps, more Southward^c. Thus were the Northern Parts of *Europe* supplied with *Indian* Commodities; and this was the chief Support of the Commerce which flourished there so long.

Course of
Trade by
Russia.

THE remaining Part of the Goods that came to *Astrakbán*, were transported by Karawáns to *Tána*, before-mentioned, where, being put on board the *Venetian* and *Genoese* Ships, they were carried to *Italy*; and so dispersed through the Southern Provinces of *Europe*^d. The *Venetians* sent yearly to *Tána*, sixteen Ships, on Account of this Trade, which continued so long as the Successors of *Jingh'z Khán*, in *Kapchák* or *Kipjákh*

And the
Black-Sea.

^a See *Du Halde Descr. Empire of China*, vol. 1. p. 139. *Engl. Fol. Edit.* ^b Vid *Traçt. de Tartaris precopens*, &c apud *Respub. de Russia & Tariat.* p. 238 ^c *Strahlenberg Historico-Geogr. descr. of the North-Eastern Parts of Asia*, Introd. p. 109, 110. ^d *Traçt. de Tart. ubi sup.* p. 239.

(one of the four great Parts into which the Empire of that Conqueror became divided after his Death) remained in Power: But *Timûr* or *Tamerlan*^a, having in one of his Expeditions against *Toktâmish Khân*, destroyed *Astrakhân*, that Canal of Trade was cut off; and the *Venetians* thenceforward, repaired with their Ships first to the Ports of *Syria*, particularly *Barut*, or *Beyrût*, and then to *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, to take in the *Indian Commodities*, 'till the *Portuguese* stopped up these also, by their Fleets stationed in the *Indies* for that Purpose.

Indian
Mares and
Canals of
Trade,

THE better to explain what goes before relating to the Course of Trade, it may be proper farther to observe, that before the Way to *India*, by the *Cape of Good Hope*, was discovered, the great Market in the East for Spices, Drugs, and all the rich Commodities of the neighbouring Countries and Islands, was the City of *Malakka*; from whence they were fetched by the Inhabitants of all the Western Countries, as far as the *Red-Sea*: In which Division, the most celebrated Ports for Trade were, *Kalekût*, *Kambaya*, *Ormûz*, and *Aden*^b. From *Kambaya*, the Northern Parts of *India*, *Bokhâria*, and *Kapchâk*, were supplied by the *Indus*, *Amû*, and *Caspian Sea*. As thro' this Channel the Goods came to *Astrakhân*, as above-mentioned, so from *Ormûz*, Part was landed in *Perlia*, to furnish that Country, and Part sent up the *Persian Gulf* to *Hajrah*, near the Mouth of the *Euphrates*, and from thence distributed by Karawans through *Ameria*, *Trebizond*, *Aleppo*, and *Damascus*, whole Port then was *Beyrût*. Such Commodities as were carried up the *Red-Sea*, were landed at *Jeddah*, the Port of *Mekka*, or else at *Tor*, or *Suez*, Towns at the Bottom of that Gulf, and thence conveyed by Karawâns to *Kairo*. From *Kairo* they were sent in Barks down the *Nile* to *Alexandria*, from whence, not only *Europe* was furnished by the *Venetians* and *Genoese*, but all the Countries to the West of *Egypt*, along the Coast of *Barbary*, were supplied by the Karawâns, as *Barka*, *Tunis*, *Tremesen*, *Fez*, *Marokko*, and *Sûs*. Some of the Goods were carried even beyond the *Atlas*, to the City of *Tombûto*, in *Negroland*, and the Country of the *Jolofs*. This Canal of Trade, which had been interrupted for a long Time, by the Distractions which reigned in the Western *Khalifat*, was restored by the *Mamlûk* Soltâns of *Egypt*, about the Year 1300^c.

By the Cas-
pian Sea,

By the Per-
sian Gulf,

By the Red-
Sea

Thus
attained by,

THUS almost all the Trade of the East was engrossed, for several Ages, by the Republick of *Venice*, which grew thereby immensely rich, and was, in Effect, the *Alexandria* of the middle Age, as *Amsterdam* is of the present. She continued in

a Possession of this Trade, till such Time as the *Portuguese* found out the Way to *India* by the *Cape of Good Hope*. This important Discovery proved fatal to her Wealth and Power; which, as a late *French* Author observes, was so great, "That *Venice* defended herself alone, and by her own proper Force, against the Empire, the Pope, the Kings of *France* and *Aragon*, and almost all the Princes of *Italy*, who had sworn her Ruin^d", on Account of her Pride, and that Contempt which she shewed towards all her Neighbours in those Days of her Prosperity. Such are the vast Advantages arising from the Improvement of Commerce!

THE *Genoese* maintained their Footing in the Places they had taken from the *Greeks*, till the *Turks* having subdued the Empire of *Constantinople* (which had long been dwindling, and retained but the Shadow of its ancient Grandeur) by Degrees, dispossessed them. At length *Kaffa* was taken from them by *Mohammed II* which put an End to their Trade and Possessions in those Seas. The Tables now were intirely turned, and the *Genoese* and *Venetians*, who had so long engrossed, and fiercely contended for the Trade of the East, now tamely gave it up to the more remote Maritime Nations, and had no farther Share in the succeeding commercial Voyages than as Pilots, or Discoverers for others.

NOR were these two the only Nations who suffered by this Discovery, which caused a Revolution in Commerce throughout the East; ruined the Trade of these celebrated *Indian* Ports before-mentioned, and diverted all the Riches of *Asia*, into a new Channel. Insomuch that, not long after the *Portuguese* had entered the *Indies*, a Confederacy was formed to drive them out again by several of the prime Maritime Powers, assisted by the Soltan of *Egypt*, who sustained a Loss thereby, equal at least, to any of the rest.

THE Trade of *Europe* was in the Situation just now mentioned, when the directive Property of the Magnet came to be found out, the Attractive having been well known to the Ancients, yet so negligent often are the Historians of recording useful Inventions, that neither the Author, nor Time of the Discovery, is ascertained by Writers, who differ much about them. Some will have the Discovery to be derived from the ancient *Greeks*, others from the *Arabs*; many insist, that *Marco Polo*, or *Paulus Venetus*, brought it into *Italy* from *China*, or some other Country, where he had been on his Travels in the East, about the Year 1260; some again say, that our famous Friar, *Roger Bacon*, first found out the Verticity, or Polar Attraction of the Loadstone. But the

And lost
with Trade.

Other Na-
tions suffer by

The Inven-
tion of the
Compass.

^a These are the same with the *Zarvolgensian Tartars*, mentioned in our Histories *Portuguese Asia*, vol. 1 p. 82. ^b See *de Faria y Sousa*, *See Galvan's Discoveries*, ap *Purchas Pilg.* vol. 2. p. 1673. ^c *De-
slandes's Essay on Maritime Power*, p. 156.

RISE and PROGRESS of

Generality of Writers ascribe this important Discovery to an Inhabitant of *Amasi*, in the Kingdom of *Naples*, not far from *Salernum*, in *Terra di Lavoro*, about the Year 1300; although they are not agreed as to his Name, whether it was *Flavio*, or *Giovanne Gioia*; nay, some call him *Gira*. In short, so very little relating to the Man, or the Original of this Affair has been preserved, that we do not find the least Mention of what his Profession was, or by what Accident he came to the Knowledge of this wonderful Secret.

When first
brought in
Use.

BE this as it will, 'tis manifest, that however wonderful the Secret may in itself be, or advantageous to the World, it proved of no great Benefit to the Inventor, since he is only mentioned as the bare Discoverer of the directive Property of the Magnet, without applying it to the Use of Navigation. Nor does it appear from Writers, that it was quickly so applied: On the contrary we do not find, that any considerable Use was made of this Discovery, or that the Mariner's Compass was contrived for Sea Uses for above a hundred Years after. Whether this was owing to the Secret not being known to many for a long Time, or to the Want of Apprehension in those who knew it, how to apply it to its proper Use; or whether to the Fear of venturing out too far from Shore, which, till then, they durst never leave Sight of, is hard to determine. However, that the Compass was found out, and in Use some Time before the Year 1415, when the *Portuguese* began to make Discoveries by Sea, is demonstrable from hence, that they do not attribute the Invention of it to themselves, or speak of it as a Novelty. The Contrivance of the Compass was a Thing, without which, the Discovery of the Magnet's directive Property, would be of little Benefit to Mankind; and yet we find no Traces in History, either how that Contrivance was first received by the Maritime Nations of *Europe*, the Time when it came in Use at Sea, or what Benefit they found by it. It could be of no great Service to them in the *Mediterranean*, the *Baltick*, the narrow Seas, or their coasting Voyages, (in all which yet they employed it) except, by Accident, they might at any Time be driven out far from Land; and therefore might have been a long Time invented, and yet regarded as little more than a Curiosity, or an Instrument that might be of Advantage, if ever long Voyages or Discoveries (which then were little thought of) should be attempted. The first *Europeans* who undertook Things of this Nature, were the *Portuguese*: But *Columbus* was the first we find on Record, who durst venture entirely to quit the Land, and launch into the Middle of the Ocean, under the Guidance of the magnetick Needle.

East-Indies
discovered by
Sea.

In the fifteenth Century, the Distractions which had for many Ages reigned in the Western

a Parts of *Europe*, ceasing, and the *Moorish* Kingdoms having been subdued in *Spain*, the several Princes had Leisure to think of strengthening their Dominions, and improving Commerce. But the first who formed the grand Design of restoring the Trade with *Asia*, by finding out a Passage to the *East Indies* by Sea, round *Africa*, was Prince *Henry*, third Son of King *John I.* of *Portugal*; who, ill brooking, that the *Venetians* should engross the whole Trade of the *East Indies* to themselves, and desirous to transfer the Wealth of those rich Countries to his own, by a more easy and profitable Channel, set on Foot that glorious Project, which was finally accomplished by King *Emanuel*, in 1497.

ALTHOUGH the *Portuguese*, from their first setting out, made successive Discoveries along the Coasts of *Africa*, yet such was the Indolence, Timorousness, or Doubt of the other Maritime Nations, that none of them once offered to follow their Example, nor could be stirred up by the Arguments of judicious and enterprising Men, to attempt Discoveries by any other Part of the Ocean. At length, *Columbus's* Proposals, for finding out a Way to the East by the West, having been rejected by the *Genoese* his Countrymen, by the *English*, and even by the *Portuguese* themselves, after eight Years tedious Solicitation at the Court of *Spain*, were accepted, more by Favour of some Courtiers there, than any Disposition in the King to hearken to them. But no sooner had *Columbus* demonstrated, by the quick Discovery of the *West Indies* in 1492, that the Ocean might contain many Continents and Islands, unknown to the *Europeans*, than all were of a sudden seized with a violent Desire of making Discoveries; and seemed ready to abandon their native Countries in Quest of new Worlds. Our *Henry VII.* who had so lately but coldly received the Petition of that Father of Navigation, now readily listened to the Proposal of *John Cabota*, for attempting a Way to the *East Indies* by the North-West, and the *Portuguese*, ashamed to have been lingering near fourscore Years, without getting beyond the Western Coast of *Africa*, ventured to pass the *Cape of Good Hope*, which had been discovered eleven Years before, and was by most deemed the *Ne plus ultra* of their Navigation.

America
found out by
Sea.

THE *Spaniards* seemed to have had no Thoughts of interfering with the *Portuguese* in their *East India* Trade, (especially, since by a late Agreement, the Eastern Hemisphere had been assigned them as their Property) when it came into the Head of *Magallanes*, a disobliged *Portuguese*, to propose to the Emperor *Charles V.* the finding out a Way to the *East Indies* by the South-West, which he effected in 1519, by passing the Straights that bear his Name; and tho' he was slain in the Voyage, yet his Ship, for the

The Globe
compassed
by Sea.

first Time, encompassed the World, and proved the Earth, by Experience, to be globular.

Discoveries
to the North-
West and
North East.

THE Discovery of this second Passage by the Spaniards, spurs on the English to find out a third, which they had already endeavoured to cut out for themselves by the North-West; and the rather, because such a Passage would have shortened the Voyage by more than one half. For this End, King Henry VIII. was solicited in 1527; by Mr. Horne, a Merchant of London, to renew that Design: But being discouraged by the little Success of John Cabota, nothing was undertaken till the Year 1551, when a Society was formed by several Persons of Note, called, *The Company for the Discovery of unknown Countries*, the chief Director whereof was *Sebastian Cabota*, Son of John. In Prosecution of which Design, they found out *Russia*, and took Possession of great Part of the Sea Coast of *North America*.

First Voyages
of the English
to the East-
Indies.

THE English were so intent on those Undertakings, that they could think of nothing else for forty Years together. However, after many unsuccessful, as well as dangerous Trials, both by the North-East, and North-West, no Hopes appeared of finding a Passage to the *East Indies* either of those Ways, they determined to make Use of that already found out by the *Cape of Good Hope*. The first Time that any Ships were sent to perform the Voyage, was in 1591; although the English had been acquainted before with the *East Indies*, by the Circumnavigations of *Drake*, in 1577, and *Candish*, in 1586, as well as by the Voyages of particular Persons made in the Ships of other Nations. But in 1600, an *East India* Company of Merchant Adventurers was established at London; and from thence-forward may be dated the Commencement of their Commerce with that Part of the World, which is so considerable at this Time.

First Voyages
of the Dutch
to the East-
Indies.

THE Dutch, who had imitated the English, in attempting the Discoveries of the North-East, and North-West Passages, followed them also by the Way of the *Cape of Good Hope*, to *East India*. Their first Essay was in 1594; and, in a few Years, they grew very formidable in the Eastern Seas. By Degrees, they made several large Acquisitions, and founded their Dominion chiefly on the Ruin of the *Portuguese*, from whom they took most of their best Settlements: Inasmuch, that at present it may be said, that they are by far the most powerful of all the *European* Nations in *India*; and that their Possessions in the East are even more considerable than those in the West.

Great Im-
provement of
Commerce.

THE Reader, from what has already been observed, may easily perceive the great Improvement which Navigation and Commerce acquired by the Invention of the Compass. For although Commerce was before carried on between distant

Nations, yet it was carried on to great Disadvantage; because, first, the Mariners not daring to venture out to Sea, for Want of such a Guide as the Magnet, they were obliged to coast along the Shore in Sight of Land, which often made the Voyage four or five Times longer than otherwise it would have been, had they taken the nearest Way from one Place or Country to another: For the same Reason, being unwilling to undertake very long Voyages, on Account of the Danger of being driven out to Sea by Storms, and so of perishing, a great Part of the World now known lay in those Days undiscovered. Europeans, for Want of knowing the Bounds of *Africa*, and being able to sail round it, were obliged to have the *Indian* Commodities landed at some Port in the Eastern Seas, and thence carried over Land to some Port of the *Mediterranean*; which made the Price of them ten times greater, while that Trade was in the Hands of the *Venetians*, than it is at present.

WHILE Trade was thus carried on by coasting Voyages, neither Ship-building, nor the Art of Navigation received any great Improvement. Ships, which were continually to keep near Shore, and put into Port on the least Appearance of a Storm, were under no Necessity of being very strongly built; nor did it require any extraordinary Art to direct them: But when it was resolved to traverse the main Ocean many hundred Leagues from Land, and brave Tempests, without any Port at hand to fly to for Shelter, it then became absolutely necessary, not only to build Ships of a Strength able to endure the furious Shocks of Winds, with the tossing of the Sea, and resist the Force of Currents; but also to contrive other Methods, in Conjunction with the Compass, to render the Course of Vessels certain, and Navigation more secure.

Navigation
and Ship-
ping.

MARINERS were soon made sensible, that though the Compass was of admirable Use to direct their Course on any particular Rhumb, yet it was not always sufficient to bring them to the desired Port, by Reason, the Winds and Currents were apt to drive the Ship out of the Line it was to steer upon. To remedy this, they found it expedient to assist the Magnetic Needle, by taking the Altitude of the Sun or Stars at Sea, thereby to know what Latitude the Ship was in at any Time. As before they made use of Portolans or Draughts of the Coasts with Directions, (like the present Wagoners or coasting Pilots) to help them in passing from Port to Port, so the sailing by Altitudes and the Compass together, naturally brought in the Use of Charts.

Sailing by
Altitudes and
Charts intro-
duced.

THERE was but one Thing more wanting, to make the Art of Navigation perfect, and that was, a Method for Mariners to know at any Time how much Way the Ship had made to the East

Situation of
the Coast
ascertained

or West of the Place she set out from, as by observing the Altitudes, they knew how much she had declined to the North or South. This desirable Problem, which is called the Longitude, presently set the Mathematicians of all the Maritime Nations of Europe at Work, who, in a little Time, invented several nice and exact Methods for finding it; and though none of them have been hitherto so successfully applied at Sea, as fully to answer the End proposed, yet the great Advances made that Way, give Hopes, that in Time, it will become practicable. Mean while, to remedy that Defect as much as possible, the Situation of all the known Coasts of the Earth, has been so accurately fixed by the Observations of able Astronomers, both as to Longitude and Latitude, that if Mariners do but keep a tolerably just Reckoning, they can scarce ever be at a Loss to know their Distance from Land, in any Part of the Ocean.

All owing to
the Invention
of the Com-
pass.

THE Europeans, having been deprived of the Benefits they enjoyed of the East India Trade, during the Continuance of the Roman Empire (by Egypt, and other of its Provinces, falling into the Hands of the Arabs and their Successors) it is undeniably evident, that they could never have recovered it again, had it not been for the Invention of the Compass. With the Loss of their Trade, they lost the Knowledge of those Eastern Regions; but, by Means of the Compass, they retrieved both, with infinite Advantage.

Little of the
Earth known
to the An-
cients.

THE Greeks and Romans knew little beyond the River Ganges Eastward, the Fortunate or Canary Islands Westward; sixty-three Degrees of Latitude Northward; and sixteen Degrees fifteen Minutes below the Line Southward: So that all the North Part of Europe and Asia, with the Arctic Lands; the Eastern Parts of Tartary, China, [and the Peninsula of India beyond the Ganges] and the Southern Part of Africa, were unknown to them; besides America, and the Oceans surrounding the several Continents, with the Islands belonging to them^a.

Less to Eu-
ropeans in
the Middle
Age.

WITHIN this Compass however, (small as it was, in Comparison of what is known at present) their Knowledge of the Earth far exceeded that of Europeans, before the Discoveries made in the fifteenth Century by Columbus, and de Gama, under the Direction of the Compass: For in the

a thirteenth Century, they seem to have been persuaded, that there was no travelling beyond the Mountains of Nubia; and that the Head of the Nile, known in the Time of Gama the Monk, 730 Years before, was investigable^b. Nay, in the very Age wherein both the East and West were laid open, their Travellers tell us, that the Source of that River was sought for in the Indies; and that beyond, there were no Inhabitants^c.

WHETHER, without the Knowledge of the Compass, we should always have continued in Ignorance of the Coasts of Asia, which were known to the Romans; or those of Africa, to which they were Strangers, I will not take upon me to determine: But this one may safely venture to assert, that but for the Discovery of the Magnetic Needle, America had never been discovered to us; at least we should never have been able to have kept up a Correspondence with that Part of the World by Sea, had Chance ever happened to make it known to us, as in the Opinion of many, (though without any good Grounds) to the Antients it once did; and whatever Parts of the Earth may be still unknown, they must owe their Discovery (whensoever that shall fall out) chiefly to the Assistance of the Mariner's Compass.

That they
knew so much
now, owing
to the Com-
pass

HAVING given this general Account of Navigation and Commerce, and shewn in what Manner the Maritime Nations of Europe, of late Ages, revived and extended them, we shall proceed, in the first Part of this Collection, to a more particular Detail of Matters, by inserting the most remarkable Voyages, made by each Nation, to the different Parts of the World above-mentioned, in the following Order: First, those to the East Indies by the South-East and Cape of Good Hope, till the Europeans settled there. Secondly, those to the West Indies, and other Parts of the Eastern Coasts of America, to the same Period. Thirdly, those by the South West to the East Indies, or round the Globe, containing the first Circumnavigations. Fourthly, those to the several Parts of the known World promiscuously, since the Time of the first Discoveries and Settlements, chiefly on Account of Commerce. Fifthly, those to the North-East, for discovering a Passage that Way to the East Indies. Sixthly, those to the North-West, on the same Design.

Order of
ranging the
Voyages.

^a See Geogr. Reformed, p. 261.

^b Vid. Brocard. Descr. Terr. Sanct. cap. penult. apud Geogr. Reformed, p. 218.

^c Vid. Brodenbach Peregrin. p. 139. ap. eund.

A New General COLLECTION of

V O Y A G E S.

P A R T I.

VOYAGES *to the* SOUTH-EAST *and* EAST INDIES,
till the EUROPEANS *settled there.*

B O O K I.

The First Voyages of the Portugueze *to the* East Indies.

The I N T R O D U C T I O N.

*Late Voyages
and Discoveries
wonderful.*

OF all the great Events that have happened in the World of late Ages, those which concern the Voyages and Discoveries, made by *Europeans* in the fifteenth and sixteenth Centuries, do justly challenge the Preference; whether we consider the vast Improvement they made in their Commerce and Navigation; the Wealth they brought into *Europe*; the surprising Actions they performed in these Expeditions; the mighty Possessions they acquired in very remote Regions; or the Knowledge they attained of the greater Part of the Earth, till then quite unknown to them. By these Discoveries, a new Creation, a new Heaven and a new Earth, seemed to be opened to the View of Mankind; who may be said to have been furnished with Wings to fly from one End of the Earth to the other, and bring the most

VOL.

a distant Nations acquainted. 'Tis observable, in the common Course of Things, that the same Events frequently recur; but the Transactions of those Times were as singular in their Nature, as they were great and surprising: Nor can the like ever happen again, unless there were more new Worlds to be discovered, and other *Indies* to conquer.

I N the Merit and Glory of these Atchievements, the *Portugueze*, without all Controversy, are intitled to the first and principal Share: For although *America* was found out by the *Spaniards*, some Years before the *Portugueze* got to the *East Indies* by Sea; although the Discovery of *America* was performed infinitely quicker than that of the *East Indies*, and the Exploit of *Columbus* much more extraordinary than that of *de Gama*, as having accomplished his Design in the very first Attempt, and

Chief Glory due to the Portugueze.

and that without any previous Knowledge of the Countries he went to find out; yet it must be confessed, that they first set on Foot the Navigation of the Ocean, and put it into the Heads of other Nations, to go on the Discovery of distant Regions.

Particulars of other Nations,

OTHER Nations were so far from being even as early as the *Portuguese* in Attempts of this Kind, that these latter had been carrying on their Enterprises, near fourscore Years, before any of their Neighbours seem to have thought of foreign Discoveries; the Endeavours towards which, they considered as downright Knight Errantry, and the Effect of a distempered Imagination, as well in the first Promoter, as those who prosecuted his Scheme. But the several Events shewed, that the Designs were the Results of solid Reasoning, and formed on the most rational Grounds.

• IN a Word, the Account of these Discoveries makes one of the most curious Parts of *Modern History*, as comprizing a Multitude of the most remarkable Transactions that ever happened in any Period of Time. For this Reason, we have been the more particular in reciting them, well knowing, that the Curious will be desirous to be acquainted with every Step that was made in such grand Proceedings, and by what Degrees such vast Undertakings came to be accomplished: Besides, as this Intercourse of *Europeans* wrought a very great Change in the several Countries and their Inhabitants wherever they came, and both appear in a different Light to what they did before, therefore every Circumstance, relating to such Transactions, seems to deserve Notice, and even claim our Regard.

Portuguese Affairs previous to their Discoveries.

IN the Year of the *Hejrah* 93, and of Christ 711, Spain was subjected to *Walid ibn Abdolmalek*, (the sixth *Omniyan Khalifah* of *Baghdad*) by *Yarik* and *Musa*; who were brought in by Count *Juhan*, Governor of the Coasts of *Andalusia*, to revenge himself on *Roderic*, last of the *Gothish* Kings, for despoiling his Daughter *Cava*. The *Arabs*, in a very short Space, erected several little Monarchies, whose Kings quarrelling amongst themselves, gave *Don Pelayo* (or *Peladius*) Prince of *Asturias*, an Opportunity, in 718, of making Head against them. His Successors continued the War for above 300 Years with good Success; and in 1085, *Alfonso VI.* of *Castile* and *Leon*, took *Toledo* from them. To requite *Henry* of *Lorain*, (by

a some called Earl of *Limbourg*) who had been very serviceable to him in his Wars, he gave him his elder Daughter *Teresa*, with the County of *Portugal* in Dowry, and whatever else he should take from the *Moors*, or old Inhabitants of *Mauritania*, who had, a little before this, conquered both the West Part of *Africa* and *Spain* from the *Arabs*. *Don Alphonso*, Son of *Henry*, was the first King of *Portugal*, newly erected into a Monarchy, on the Slaughter of the *Moors* in those Parts; who, in the Time of *John I.* were quite driven out. This Prince, pursuing that hereditary Quarrel, passed the Sea in 1415, and took *Ceuta* aforesaid. He and his Posterity made *Africa* the Seat of War, till they were diverted by their Enterprises by Sea; which, of the two, proved more beneficial, and less hazardous.

THIS Conquest of *Ceuta*, or *Seut*, is mentioned by *Walsingham*, who lived in those Times, and tells us, That the King of *Portugal*, relying on the *Almans* [or *Germans*] but most of all, on the *Merchants* of *England*, overcame the *Agarens* [or *Arabs*] in the Land of the King of the *Betinarins* ^b, [*Bani Marins*] many Thousands of them (says our Author, according to the charitable Custom of his Church) being sent to Hell; and took their City called *Sunt*, seated on the Sea, being very large, and surrounded with a Wall, twenty Miles, 'tis said, in *Compass*. King *John* had some Claim to this Assistance from the *English*, as having married *Philippa* (Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, and Sister to *Henry IV.* ^c) whose third Son *Henry*, was the first who set on Foot foreign Discoveries.

CHAP. I.

Voyages and Discoveries of the Portuguese along the Coast of Africa, as far as Cape Verde. Collected from de Faria y Sousa, Juan de Barros, Antonio Galvam, and other Authors.

IN the Year 1415, Prince *Henry* accompanied his Father in the taking of *Ceuta*, and had a considerable Share in the Honour of that Victory ^d, wherein he signalized both his Courage and Conduct; which was the more to be admired, in Regard, at that Time, he was but in the 21st Year of his Age. At his Return from *Africa*, he brought back with him so strong an Inclination to discover new Lands and Oceans, that he

1415. First Ships sent out to discover.

^a See *Walsing. Hist. Angl. Ann.* 1415.

^b These *Bani Marins*, were a Tribe of *Moors*, or *Africans*, who, under *Yakub Abdallah*, in 1299, ousted the *Moabedun*, or a *Mobuder*, as the *Spaniards* call them.

^c Long before this, in the Time of *Henry II.* the *English*, in Conjunction with other Northern Pilgrims, designed for the Holy Land Expedition, sailing from *Dartmouth* in about twenty-seven Ships, touched at *Lisbon*, where the King of *Portugal* besought their Aid against the *Moors* of *Sylva* or *Sylais*, proffering them the Spoils of that City in Recompence. Having undertaken the Enterprise, on the third Day of the Siege, they broke into the Suburbs, and forced *Alkbad* the Prince, to yield the City, in which there were above 60,000 *Moors*, whereof 47,000 were slain.

^d He was Governor of the Military Order of *S. James*, which had been instituted for maintaining War against the *Moors*.

1415. spent above forty Years in Attempts that Way: a fertile. The Prince, joyful at this News, and 1418. laying out vast Sums of Money in bringing experienced Masters and Discoverers from all Parts^a; and in sending Ships abroad to make Discoveries. Being well read in Geography, (as well as other Parts of Mathematics) and having consulted many, who had travelled over a good Part of the then known World, (chiefly the *Moors* of *Fez* and *Marocco*) he got some Information concerning the *Arabs*, who border on the Deserts of *Africa*, and of the *Affenhaji*, together with the Kingdom of *Jalof*, near the Borders of *Guinea*. That he might apply himself more wholly to these Affairs, he chose for his Residence the Town of *Ternacabal*, in the Kingdom of *Algarve*, situate on *Cape Sagres*; whence, the Prospect of the Ocean, stirred up his Hopes and Endeavours. Going to Bed one Night, with his Thoughts fixed on these Designs, in the Morning he gave Orders for fitting out two Ships; which, with some others that followed, passed no farther than *Cape Bojador*, sixty Leagues beyond *Cape Nam* or *Nan*, then the Bounds, or *Ne plus ultra* of the Spanish Navigation^b. This Cape was so named, because it stretches itself out so far Westward (almost forty Leagues) which, in Spanish, is called, *Bojar*, and thence the Cape, *Bojador*. There is likewise a strong Current, which runs off it, for about six Leagues, and breaking upon the Sands, makes a great Swell. This terrified all the Adventurers, not considering, that by keeping out at Sea, they might turn the Point. The Prince, who knew how to overcome the Difficulty, in 1418, sent *Juan Gonzales Zarco*, and *Tristan Vaz Teixeira*, Gentlemen of his Household, in a small Ship, with Orders to coast along the *Barbary* Shore, till they had passed that formidable Cape; and discovered all the Land, which, according to the Opinions of learned Men, and the Information of the *Arabs*, ran on as far as the Equator. Before they reached the Coast of *Africa*, they met with such violent Storms, that they expected every Minute to be swallowed up by the Waves. They were driven, without knowing where they were, to a little Island, which they called *Puerto Santo*, or *Holy Haven*, for such it appeared to them after the Storm^c. They found the Inhabitants neither thoroughly civilized, nor quite barbarous; but the Soil very

Discovery of
Cape Boja-
dor,

Of Puerto
Santo,

PERESTRELLO return'd home; and *Juan Gonsales*, and *Tristan Vaz*, making another Voyage in 1419, discovered, afar off, something like a Cloud. Directing their Course to it, they found an Island covered with all manner of Trees, whence they gave it the Name of *Madera*^d, of *Madera*, which, in Spanish, signifies Wood. This Island (which lies a little to the South of the former) for Largeness, pleasant Air, and Plenty of Provisions, is the chief in the Western Ocean. Each Discoverer entered a different Part, and had a Grant of such from the Prince, with the Title of Captain. *Tristan* gave his Name to the Point where he landed, and *John Gonsales* called his Portion, *Camara de Lobos*, that is, the *Den of Wolves*, because of a Cave he found, which seemed to be the Habitation of those Beasts. Here they found the Chapel, Tomb and Stone, erected by *Macham*, an *Englishman*, who flying out of *England* to *Spain*, with a Woman whom he loved, was driven here by Storm, about the Year 1344^e. The whole Island being covered with Wood, the Discoverers began to settle their Plantation, by firing Part of it; but the Flame took such Possession, that it burnt seven Years continually, and was seen far off in Smoke and Sparks, like Mount *Etna*: So that there was no less Scarcity afterwards, than Superabundance before. The Prince caused Sugar Canes to be carried thither from *Sicily*, whereof the Increase hath been such, that in some Years, the fifth Part (which the Prince reserved to his Military Order) hath amounted to above 60,000 *Arbes* (twenty-five Pounds each) growing in one Place only, little more than nine Miles in Compass. Churches were soon after built, and now there is a Cathedral. King *Duarte* (or *Edward*) Brother to the Prince, gave him the Island,

^a Among the rest, Mention is made of one *James*, a Person skilled in Navigation, and in making Charts, and other Sea Instruments, whom Prince *Henry* sent for from *Majorca*, to teach those Arts in a School, or Academy, which he had erected for the Purpose.

^b See *Da Barros Asia*, Decad. 1. lib. 1. cap. 2. *de Faria y Sousa*, *Asia Portug.* tom. 1. cap. 1. ^c See the same Authors and Places. ^d *De Barros*, *ibid.* cap. 3. *de Faria y Sousa*, *ibid.*

^e The Port where *Macham* put into, is, at present, called, *Machico*. His Mistress being Sick, he landed with some of his Company. Mean Time, the Ship putting to Sea, left him there; whereupon she died for Grief. *Macham*, who was extremely fond of her, built the Chapel, or Hermitage, which he called *Jesus Chapel*, to bury her in; and cut both their Names on the Tomb Stone, with the Cause of their Arrival. After this, making a Boat of the Trunk of one of the Trees, (which are very thick in this Island) he, with his Companions, went into it; and, without Sail or Oars, passed over to the Coast of *Africa*. The *Moors* of the Country, looking upon this as a Miracle, presented him to their King, who sent him to the King of *Castile*.

1432. and afterward, the Spiritualities thereof, to the Military Order of Christ.

The Attempts
continued.

THE Prince had spent twelve Years, endeavouring the Discovery of *Guinea*; and was now much encouraged, by the Success of finding these two Islands. Mean Time, many condemned his Undertakings, objecting, the Consumption of Money and Men, the insuperable Difficulties of Currents, Storms, Whirlpools, that the Country he looked for, was only Desarts, like those of *Libya*; and that, if any should chance to reach it, they would turn back, without venturing farther; that King *John*, his Father, had invited Strangers to come and settle in *Portugal*, so far was he from sending out People, of which the Country was in Want: That God had appointed those Countries for the Habitation of wild Beasts, which might appear from their being expelled the new Island by the Rabbits. Indeed, the little Fruit of the Prince's Enterprize, gave some Handle for Censure, till he sent *Gilianez* in a Bark, who, about the Year 1432, passed that, till then, invincible Cape, (called by him) *Bojador*; which Action was, at that Time, in the common Opinion, looked upon, not inferior to the Labours of *Hercules*.

Cape Bojador doubled.

ABOUT this Time, Prince *Henry* obtained of Pope *Martin V.* a perpetual Donation ^a to the Crown of *Portugal*, of whatever Discoveries should be made from this Cape to the *East Indies*, inclusively; with plenary Indulgence for the Souls of all such as should perish in the Undertaking: Which Grant was confirmed by the succeeding Popes *Eugenius*, *Nicholas*, and *Sextus*, at the Instance of King *Alphonso*, and his Son *Juan*. This Step was taken both as a Security against the interfering of other Nations, and an Incentive to the common People to engage in the Service.

IN 1434, *Gilianez* went again in his Bark, with *Alonso Gonzales Baldaya*, in a bigger Vessel, and passed thirty Leagues beyond the Cape: Where landing, they saw a great Track of Men and Cattle; and, without any farther Inquiry, returned home, giving the Name of *Angra de Ruyvus*, or *The Bay of Gurneis*, to that Coast, from the Fish they found there. Next Year, 1435, the Design was continued, and they passed twelve Leagues farther. Here they put ashore two Men on Horseback, who, going on till the Afternoon, saw nineteen of the Natives armed with Javelins. These flying, were pursued, and some of them wounded, so was one of the *Portuguese*; the first Blood spilt in those Parts. *Baldaya*, having Notice hereof, landed, but to no Purpose; for the *Moors* were marched off. Only in the Cave, where they had been, were found some Things

Angra de Ruyvus

of inconsiderable Value, but esteemed as an Omen of greater Advantages. They ran along the Coast twelve Leagues farther, where, at the Mouth of a River, they saw above 5000 Sea Wolves, many whereof they killed, and brought away their Skins; which, being a Novelty, were then had in great Esteem. Going farther into the Land, they found fishing Nets drying, but no People; and their Provisions being spent, they were obliged to return to their Prince, without making any farther Progress ^b.

1435.

soon Sea Wolves.

ANTONIO GONZALES was sent back in 1440, to the same Place, in order to load his Vessel with the Skins of Sea Wolves. One Night he went up the Country eight Leagues with ten Men; and spying a naked Man, with two Darts in his Hand, driving a Camel, came up and took him: For being frightened, he neither defended himself, nor endeavoured to escape. In their Way back, they met a Company of forty *Moors*, and one Woman, whom they also took, without Resistance, from the rest. These two were the first seized on that Coast. Returning on board, they found another Ship arrived from *Portugal*, under the Command of *Nunno Triflan*. With this additional Strength, they went ashore again, and met People at Night. Being so close, that they lost the Use of their Weapons, they clasped each other in their Arms, without knowing whom they held, otherwise than as they were naked or clothed, and differed in Language. They killed three, and returned to their Ships with ten Prisoners. This Place they called, *Puerto del Cavallero*, or *The Knights Port*; *Antonio Gonzales* being there knighted by *Nunno Triflan*. There being an *Arab* on board, who understood these *Moors*, they put him and the Woman ashore, to persuade the Inhabitants to redeem the Prisoners. Next Day there appeared about a hundred and fifty, some on Camels, some on Horseback, provoking the *Portuguese* to land; but finding they did not, discharged a Volley of Stones at them, and went off. *Antonio Gonzales* went back to *Portugal* with some Slaves; but *Triflan*, having first careened, coasted on as far as *Cabo Blanco*, or *Cabo Blanco*, where, though he saw the Track of People, yet meeting none, he sailed home.

IN 1442, *Antonio Gonzales* returned again to the same Coast, carrying with him the Chief of the *Moors* he had taken, who promised to give seven *Guinea* Slaves for his Ransom. But being once at Liberty, he forgot his Promise. However, on his landing, others came to redeem the two young Men that were Prisoners; giving in Exchange ten Blacks of several Countries, and a considerable Quantity of Gold Dust, which was

^a This Donation is wrong placed by *Purchas*, after the Year 1442, *Martin* having died in 1431
Barros, *ibid.* cap. 5. de *Faria y Sousa*, *ibid.* De *Barros*, *ibid.* cap. 7. de *Faria y Sousa*, *ibid.*

1442. the first brought from those Parts. For this Reason, a *Rio del Oro* that runs about six Leagues up the Coast, was called, *Rio del Oro*, or *The River of Gold*. Besides these Things, they fetched home a Shield of Buckskin, and some Ostriches Eggs; every body admiring the Colour of the Slaves. The Gold stirred up covetous Desires, and encouraged *Nunno Triflan* to undertake the Voyage again in 1443. Advancing farther, he discovered the Island *Adeget*, one of those of *Arguim*; and saw twenty *Almadias*, or Boats, passing over from the Continent, four Men in each, sitting in such Manner, that they rowed with their Legs. *Triflan* sending out his Boat with seven Men, chased them, and took fourteen; but going back for the rest, they had reached the Island. Hence they went over to another, which they called, *De las Garzas*, or *The Island of Hawks*, because of the vast Numbers they saw there, some of which they took.

Is. de las Garzas.

A Company for Discovery.

THE Profit increasing, the Desire of it also increased. Some came from several Parts to Portugal, to admire those Rarities their Countrymen brought. In 1444, *Lancelot*, the Prince's Servant, *Gilianes*, (who first passed *Cape Bojador*) *Stephen Alonso*, *Roderic Alvarez*, and *Juan Diaz*, having obtained the Prince's Leave, on paying him an Acknowledgement, erected a Company in the Town of *Lagos*, to pursue these Discoveries: They set out with six Caravels, whereof the first was Commander in Chief. Arriving at the Island *de las Garças*, *Martin Vincent*, and *Giles Vasquez*, with each fourteen Soldiers in their Boats, went over to the Island *Nar*, where assaulting a Town, they killed many, and brought away 155 Prisoners, all *Moors*. *Lancelot*, attacked *Tider*, and other Islands, where he took above 40 Prisoners, which he presented to the Prince, and was well rewarded.

Angra de Gonzalo de Cintra.

GONZALO DE CINTRA set out with one Ship in 1445, and coming to the Islands *Arguim*, ran up a Creek at Night, intending to go ashore; but the Tide ebbing, he stuck; and in the Morning, 200 *Moors* coming upon him, he was killed with seven of his Company. These were the first *Portuguese* killed in these Attempts; and from the Captain, that Place took Name, being called, *Angra de Gonzalo de Cintra*, fourteen Leagues beyond *Rio del Oro*. *Antonio Gonzales*, *Diego Alonso*, and *Gomez Perez*, set out next Year, 1446, in three Caravels, bound for that River; with Orders to treat about the Conversion of those Barbarians, Peace, and Trade. The Proposals were rejected, and they returned, bringing back one of the Natives, who came voluntarily to see the Country; and *John Fernandez* remained there with the same Design. *Nunno Triflan*,

made another Voyage, and brought twenty Slaves from a neighbouring Village. *Denis Fernandez*, in another Vessel, passing the Mouth of the River *Sanaga*, which divides the *Affanaji* from the *Jalofi*, took four Blacks, who were fishing in an *Almadia*, or Boat. Sailing forward, he discovered the famous *Cabo Verde*, set up a wooden Cross, and returned.

1446. *Cape Verde discovered.*

ANTONIO GONZALES, *Garcia Mendez*, and *James Alonso*, though separated by a Storm, met again in 1447, in the Islands of *Arguim*. Falling upon a Village, they seized twenty-five *Moors* of those which fled. He that ran best took most, as *Lorenzo Diaz*, who took seven, whilst others caught but one, and some none. They called this Point, *Cabo del Resgate*, or *Cape of Ransom*, because some Blacks were ransomed there. Their Joy was the more, in that they found *Juan Fernandez*, who was left there the last Voyage: He was fat and in Health, though rough like the Inhabitants. He told them, that the Country being all plain and open, they often lost their Way, and therefore were guided, as at Sea, by the Stars, the Winds, and the Birds. That the Inhabitants lived miserably, feeding on a certain Grain, which the Earth produced without tilling, some Herbs, Lizards, and Locusts, all scorched in the Sun, which is predominant; that Place lying under the Tropic of Cancer: That they used much Milk, not only as Meat, but Drink, by Reason of the Scarcity of Water; and therefore when they killed Animals for Food, they spared the Females. Those near the Sea, sometimes fed on Fish; and when the *Portuguese* gave them Corn, they eat it whole. The Land is barren, being all Sand, which bears a few Palms, and wild Fig Trees. They have no Houses but Tents. Their Cloaths are Skins of Beasts: The better and neater Sort wear Alhaks, which is not unlike our Crape; and the top People of all, some better Sort of Cloath, but none good. Their Employment is the Care of Cattle: Their Language and Characters, the same with those of the Coasts of *Barbary*, differing as much only, as the *Castilian* and the *Gallician*. They have no King, and live in Clans, or Companies. In their Way home, at *Cabo Blanco*, they killed some *Moors*, and took fifty-five.

DINISIANEZ DA GRAM, *Alvaro Gil*, and *Masaldo de Setubal*, with each a Caravel, landed in the Island *Arguim*, where they took seven *Moors*, and by their Help, forty-seven afterwards. They ran along the Coast of the Continent eighty Leagues, and at several Times took fifty Slaves, losing seven *Portuguese*; whose Boat being lost by the Ebb, in the Island *De las Garças*, they were all killed. *Lancelot*, who once before had

Adventurer of da Gram.

1447. commanded a small Fleet, sailed from *Lagos* again, a towards *Arguim*, as Admiral of fourteen Vessels. At the same Time set out for *Madera*, *Alvaro*, and *Dinis Fernandez*, *Juan de Castilla*, and others, who all together, with the former fourteen, made up twenty-seven Sail. Nine of the fourteen from *Lagos*, came to *Arguim*, where *Dinis Fernandez* was; who persuaded them to destroy the Island, in Revenge of the seven that had been killed. But the *Moors*, understanding the Danger, fled: So that no more than twelve were found, whereof only four could be taken; the rest were killed, as was also one *Portuguese*. *Alvaro de Freytas* returned home with his three Ships: But *Lancelot* with his, sailed to the Island *Tider*, landed, and finding no People, returned on board; where, seeing some *Moors* jeering his Men, because they could not find them, two *Portuguese* were so provoked, that they leaped into the Water with their Arms, and swam to Shore to the *Moors*, who ran down to receive them. Others, seeing the Danger those two were in, leaped after them, and on the Shore was a sharp Skirmish; many of the *Moors* being killed, and sixty taken. This done, *Suero da Costa*, and three more, returned home. In a Village, at Cape *Blanco*, they took nine *Moors*, and among them a Woman, who promising a great Ransom, deceived *Suero*: For, at the Island *Tider*, the bold Female, who could swim very well, leaped over board, and gained her Liberty by that Art. *Lancelot*, and others, unwilling to return as light as they came out, designed to sail to the *Sarrah* of the *Affanbaji*, and *Guinea*; but after some small Attempts, resolved for the Island of *Palma*. They touched at *Gomera*, and were entertained by two Commanders, *Pisto* and *Bruchio*, in Acknowledgement of some Kindness they had received from Prince *Henry*. They discovered to them the Design, and taking them along, landed in *Palma*. All they got were seventeen Prisoners; but among them, was a very large *Moorish* Woman, said to be Queen of Part of that Island. They returned to *Gomera*, and *Juan de Castilla*, dissatisfied with the small Prize, basely and ungratefully carried away Captives, above twenty Islanders, who were his Friends, and had assisted him: For which Wrong, the Prince made Satisfaction, by sending them back well clothed.

Palma.
Gomera.

Canaries
discovered.

GOMERA, and *Palma*, belong to the *Canaries*. These Islands were discovered in 1395, for King *Henry III.* of *Spain*; after which, in 1417, *Jaen de Betancourt*, a *Frenchman*, obtained Leave of King *Juan II.* of *Castile*, to conquer them. Having subdued those of *Lancerote*, *Fuerteventura*, and *Ferro*, he left *Masiot de Betancourt*, his Nephew, to govern them, who seized

De Faria y Sousa, ibid.

De Faria y Sousa, ibid.

the *Sanaga*, or *Sanaga*, if not from the *Affanbaji* Tribes,

Antonio Galvao, or

Ti called also *Senaga*,

Galvao, places this Expedition in the Year 1427.

Gomera; after which, exchanging them with Prince *Henry* for some Land in *Madera*, he went and lived there. And because eight of the Islands, being twelve in Number, remained unconquered, viz. *Gran Canaria*, *Palma*, *Graciosa*, *Infierno*, *Alegrança*, *Santa Clara*, *Rache*, and *Lobos*; the Prince, the same Year 1447^b, sent a Fleet, in which were 2500 Foot, and 120 Lances, commanded by Don *Ferdinando de Castro*, who landing there, converted many Infidels: But the Court of *Spain* laying some Sort of Claim to that Acquisition, the Design was laid aside. Afterwards, King *Henry IV.* of *Portugal*, gave them to Don *Martin de Ataide*, Count of *Antonguia*: And lastly, in the Treaty between *Alonso* of *Portugal*, and *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, it was agreed, that they belonged to this latter State. The Inhabitants of these Islands, were governed by a certain Number of Persons. They differed in their Forms of Worship. In Fight, they used no Weapons but Sticks and Stones: Their Cloathing upwards, was Skins; the lower Part, a Covering made of Palm Leaves of divers Colours. They took off their Beards with sharp Stones. Their Governors had the Maidenheads of all Virgins that married: They treated their Guests with them at their Visits. The Children sucked Goats. Their common Food was Wheat and Barley, Milk, Herbs, Mice, Lizards, and Snakes.

LANCELOT, being homeward bound, discovered the River *Ouedek*, which he called *Sa-naga*^a, because a Black of that Name, was revealed there. It was then believed to be one of the Branches of *Nile*; because they were informed, it came far from the Eastward. *Stephen Alonso*, in a small Boat, went up the River, and took two Blacks, after considerable Opposition made by their Father. *Roderigo Anex*, and *Dinis Diaz*, were here separated from the rest by a great Storm, and arrived in *Portugal*. *Lancelot*, steering towards Cape *Verde*, went ashore upon an Island, where he found nothing but Goats, and these Words cut on the Bark of a Tree, *TALENT DE BIEN FAIRE*. This was Prince *Henry's* Motto, which expressed his Designs, and gave *Lancelot* to understand, the *Portuguese* had been there before. It was *Alvaro Fernandez*, of *Madera*, who had conducted them thither. *Lancelot* stood along the Shore, while *Gomez Perez* going up close in a Boat, threw a Looking-glass, and a Sheet of Paper with a Crucifix on it, to some Blacks, who breaking and tearing them to Pieces, poured in a Volley of Arrows; for which our Men designed to be revenged next Day. But a great Storm, which dispersed all our Ship, prevented the Execution. *Lawrence Diaz* got home

1447

River Ouedek, or Sa-naga.

Cape St. Anne.

first; *Gomez Perez* put in at *Rio del Oro*, whence he brought home a Slave, and many Skins of Sea Wolves; and found the People there somewhat tractable. *Alvaro Freytas*, and *Vincent Diaz*, in the Island *Tider*, took fifty-nine Slaves. *Dinis Fernandez*, and *Palacano*, at Cape *St. Anne*, took nine more, twelve of their Men swimming ashore for them. With these, and such like small Successes, they all returned home, having lost one small Vessel; but the Men were saved.

C H A P. II.

Discoveries of the Portugueze continued from Cape Verde, as far as Cabode Buena Esperanza, or the Cape of Good Hope: From the same Authors.

1447.

THE Doubts and Fears which naturally attend Expeditions into unknown Seas, or Countries, always obstruct great Designs at the Beginning, so as sometimes to cause them wholly to be laid aside. And this had doubtless been the Fate of the new projected Passage to *India*, if it had not been supported by an indefatigable and judicious Prince, who was not deterred by an Apprehension of Difficulties.

Rio Grande discovered.

NUNNO TRISTAN therefore, zealous to oblige his Master, advanced sixty Leagues beyond Cape *Verde*; and anchoring at the Mouth of *Rio Grande*, or the great River, ran up it in his Boat, and soon discovered eighty Blacks in thirteen *Almadias*, who surrounded him, and poured in their poisoned Arrows so thick, that most of his Men were killed before he could get aboard, where he also died, none escaping without a Wound. Only four Men, that were left in the Ship, brought her home, after wandering for two Months in the Sea, without knowing which Way to steer. *Alvaro Fernandez* prosecuting the same Voyage, went forty Leagues beyond *Tristan*; where, being hard pressed by a Multitude of the Natives, he killed their Chief, on which the rest fled. At the River *Tabite*, to which he sailed afterwards, he was wounded by the Blacks, who attacked him in five *Almadias*. *Gilanes*, and others, set out with ten Caravels, carrying with them the Prisoners, unjustly seized by *John de Castilla*. Putting in at Cape *Verde*, they were beaten, and lost five Men. As they had better Success among the *Moors*, they returned to *Arguim*, where they made forty-eight Slaves. At their Return to *Palma*, they took two Women; which had cost them dear, had not *Diego Gonzaes*, with a Cross-bow, killed seven of the Islanders, and among them their King, who led them with a Palm in his Hand, in Token of his Sovereignty.

GOMEZ PEREZ, deceived by some *Moors* of *Rio del Oro*, who had promised a great Ransom, was revenged, by bringing home eighty

a Slaves. Next Year 1448, set out *Diego Gil Homens*, with Orders from the Prince, to settle a Trade with the *Moors* of *Mesa*, or *Messa*, twelve Leagues beyond Cape *Gue*, where he got fifty Blacks, in lieu of eighty he carried with him, and returned, being drove away by a Storm. Here was left behind, against his Will, *Juan Fernandez*, he, who voluntarily staid before, among the *Affanays*. They brought home a Lion, which was then much gazed at in *Lisbon*. The Fame of these Enterprizes invited from the King of *Denmark's* Court, a Gentleman, called, *Ballarte*; a Person capable and desirous of great Designs, well recommended by his King, at whose Suit, the Prince sent him with *Ferdinando Alonso*, who was then going Ambassador to the King of Cape *Verde*. At his Landing, the Natives appeared in Arms to oppose him, till they were appeased by two Blacks, who told them the Portugueze Design was only to convert and civilize them; whereupon their *Farim*, or Governor, came down to the Shore, and sent an Account of their Arrival to his King. Mean while, they began peaceably to trade; and some Elephants Teeth having stirred up a Desire in *Ballarte* to see one alive, a Black offered to gratify his Curiosity, but treacherously slew him, and some of the Company; which obliged them not to stay the Coming of that King.

KING Duarte [or *Edward*] dying the same Year, after a short Reign, his Son *Alonso* (or *Alfonso*) the V. succeeded him, being but six Years of Age. At seventeen, he took upon him the Government, which, during his Minority, had been held by Prince *Pedro*, Brother to the Discoverer. From this Time, the Discoveries were managed upon the King's Account, who prosecuted them, though not so vigorously, as his Uncle *Henry* had done, occasioned by the Differences between the King and Prince *Peter*. The first Step he took was a Grant to *Henry*, that none, without his Leave, should pass Cape *Bojador*; as also, the Fifth and Tenth of all Things brought from thence. Next Year, Leave was given him to plant the Islands of the *Azores*, discovered by *Gonzalo Vello*. They are seven in Number; their Names *Azores*, *St. Michael*, *St. Mary*, *Jesus* or *Tercera*, *Graciosa*, *Pico*, *Fayal*, *Flores*, and *Cuervo*, which lies farthest to the Westward, as the first does most Easterly. They differ not much in Latitude, which is about the same with *Lisbon*; and had their Name from a great Number of Hawks, which they call *Azores*, that were seen there when first discovered. In *Cuervo* was found the Statue of a Man on Horseback, with a Cloak on, but no Hat; his Left-hand on the Horse's Main, his Right pointing to the West. There were some Letters carved on the lower Rock, but not understood. It seemed to point out *America*. Be-

1448.

Cape Cue.

Grant of King Alonso to Prince Henry.

planted.

1462. cause in the Islands of *Arguim*, there was Trading a for Gold and Blacks, the King ordered a Fort to be built in one of them, and called by the Name of *Arguim*. It was erected in 1461, by *Suero Mendez*, who was made Commander of it. The next Year were discovered the Islands of Cape Verde, by *Antonio de Noli*, a *Genoese*, sent by that Republic to *Portugal*. He also found the Island called, *Mayo*, or *May*, because he arrived there on the first of that Month. Next Day he saw the other two, which he termed *St. Philip*, b and *St. Jacob*. The Names of the rest are, *Fuego*, *Brava*, *Boavista*, *Sal*, *St. Nicholas*, *St. Lucy*, *St. Vincent*, *St. Antony*, in all, ten. They are commonly called the Islands of Cape Verde; for that they lie 100 Leagues to the Westward of it. *Pedro de Cintra*, and *Suero de Costa*, went as far as *Sierra Leona*.

Verde
Islands dis-
covered.

Death of
Prince
Henry.

His Cha-
racter.

THE Year following, viz. 1463, died the Prince Don *Henry*, the Beginner and Founder of all the concerted Discoveries in general, and of those to the South and East in particular. He was of a proper Size, his Limbs large and strong, his Complexion fair, his Hair strong and rough; his Countenance was terrible to such as were not accustomed to see him. For in the greatest Sallies, he was governed more by Meekness than Passion. He had a grave and graceful Gait; was very circumspect and cautious in his Words; plain, as to his Garb, so far as suited with his Quality; patient in Troubles, valiant in Danger, skilled in Learning; the best Mathematician of his Age; very liberal; extreme zealous for Religion. He was not known to be given to any Vice. He never married, nor was it heard that he sinned against Continency. His Memory and Prudence were equal to his Authority. This is the least that could be said in Honour of this great Undertaker. He left, discovered, from Cape de Non, in about twenty-nine Degrees North Latitude, to *Sierra Leona*, in eight Degrees. He died at Cape Sagres, in the sixty-seventh Year of his Age, and lies buried with his Father, in the Church of *Batalla*.

His Trade
farmed for
500 Ducats.

So great were the Hopes of the *Guinea* Trade, and the Covetousness which it stirred up, that in 1469, the King farmed it to *Fernando Gomez*, for 500 Ducats, or about 138 Pounds, for five Years, (a small Sum in Comparison of the present Profits) in which Time he was obliged to extend the Discoveries 500 Leagues farther. In 1471, the Trade of *Oro de la Mina*, or *The Gold of the Mine*, in five Degrees of Latitude, was discovered by *Juan de Santerén*, and *Pedro de Escobar*. They went as far as Cape *St. Catherine*, thirty-seven Leagues beyond Cape *Lope Gonzales*, in two Degrees and half of South Latitude. On Account of the Discovery, was added to him the Surname of *Mina*, and he was made Noble. *Fernando*

Island Ferry
discovered.

Po, discovered the Island, called by him *Hermosa*, 1471 or *Beautiful*; but afterward it took the Name. The last Discovery, during the Reign of King *Alonso*, was, that of Cape *St. Catherine*, so called, because it happened on her Day. There were other Discoveries before this, as the Coast from whence was brought the first *Cochinilla*, which the *Italians* (knowing the Value, but not the Name) call, *Grana del Paradiso*, or *Scarlet of Paradiso*. They had it from the *Moors* of the Part of *Guinea*, who, crossing the Country of *Mandinga*, and Deserts of *Libya*, brought it to the Port *Mundibarca*, in the *Mediterranean*. At this Time were found the Islands of *St. Thomas*, *St. Anna*, *Bueno*, and *Principe*, all neglected, the King being wholly bent upon the War in *Mauritania*. How little the Discoveries were then minded or pursued, may appear by this, that a *Spanish* Fleet, commanded by *Garcia de Loaysa*, Knight of *Malta*, arriving at the *Molukko* Islands, in 1525, he perceived there were *Portuguese* there, before it was known in *Portugal*; and found in two Degrees of South Latitude, the Island of *St. Matthew* uninhabited, but bearing many Footsteps of the *Portuguese*: For besides several Fruit Trees, and tame Cattle, a Memorandum remained carved on the Bark of a Tree, that they had been there eighty-seven Years before, with the *French* Motto of Prince *Henry*, *Talent de bien faire*. For it was the Custom of the Sailors of that Nation, to leave this Motto in all Places where they landed.

KING *Juan II.* who succeeded his Father *Fort de l'Alonso* 1481, considering, that the Riches brought from the discovered Countries, increased his Revenue, and having experienced the Profits of *Guinea*, while Prince, (King *Alonso* having given them to him for his Maintenance) ordered a Fort to be raised in that Part of the Coast, where the Gold Trade, called, *Mina*, was carried on. To this Purpose he fitted out twelve Ships, laden with all necessary Materials for the Work, from the Stones of the Foundation to the very Tiles; with Provisions for 600 Men, 500 of whom were Soldiers, the rest Workmen. The Commander, *Diego de Azambuja*, at his Arrival, confirmed the Peace which had been concluded some Time before with that People. He first acquainted their Prince, named *Kamaramsa*, with his Intentions: Afterwards landing, he took Possession, and set up the *Portugal* Colours upon a Tree. Next, he prepared himself to receive the Negro King, who came attended with many of his Subjects, all naked, excepting, that from their Waist, downward, hung Monkeys Skins, or Coverings made of Palm Leaves. They were all armed, some with Shields and Javelins, others with Bows and Arrows: Some had Skins for Helmets, in such Manner, that they appeared more ridiculous than terrible. The Prince's Legs and Arms were covered with Plates

Fort de l'
Mina pro-
jected.

Kamaramsa
King of
Guinea

1484.

Plates of Gold. About his Neck he wore a Chain with many small Bells and Tags to his Beard. Before him went a great Number of Instruments, more noisy than harmonious. Among others, besides Bells, were Tabors and Horns; the rest were unknown to the *Portugueze*. He met the Captain (who made a pompous Figure) with a grave and pleasing Countenance, and took him by the Hand, in Token of Peace. The Chief of his Retinue did the same. After the Ceremonies were over, *Azambuza* began to explain the Occasion of his coming, concealing the *Portugueze* Covetousness under a Mask of Religion. He first let the *African* know, that his King's Design was, to instruct him in the Christian Faith, and then asked Leave to build a House for his Men to dwell in, which was to be a Fort to offend them upon Occasion. I do not pretend, says my Author *de Faria*, to persuade the World, our only Design was to preach, on Condition it be believed, that it was not solely to trade.

THE *Portugueze* Captain was heard with much Attention, and the Proposal of Religion admitted; but that about the House or Fort rejected. For as great Barbarians as they are in our Concepts, they understand their own Interests. *Azambuza* pressed, and *Karamansu* yielded and retired. The Workmen beginning to break a Rock for the Work, the Blacks, who adored it, taking that as an Affront, drove them away. *Azambuza* took the wisest Course, and running to them, pacified them with many Gifts, which pleased, though of no Value. The Fort being finished, was called, *St George*, on Account of the particular Devotion which the King of *Portugal* had for that Saint. As it increased, it gained the Name and Privilege of a City. *Azambuza* remained there with sixty Men, and sent back the Fleet laden with Gold. He held that Government three Years, and gave it up with Honour; (a Thing rare among the *Portugueze*, says the *Portugueze* Historian) for which he was honourably rewarded.

KING *John* being fully determined to prosecute the Discovery of the Spice Trade by Sea, but unwilling that other Princes should afterwards intrude and share in the Gains, without being at any of the Expence, in 1484, made known his Intention at the several Courts in *Christendom*; soliciting each to furnish Men for making Conquests on the Infidels, offering in Return, a Part in Proportion to their several Quotas. But this Undertaking being then looked upon as very hazardous and uncertain, if not chimerical, they all declined the Proposal. Whereupon the King of *Portugal* applied himself to the Pope, to confirm his Donation, which he did; and not only

granted him all the Countries that the *Portugueze* should discover from West to East; but also decreed that no other Prince should have the Liberty of making Discoveries but the King of *Portugal*, and that if any were made by such, they should belong to his *Portugueze* Majesty. King *John* did not then consider, that Discoveries might be made from East to West, as well as from West to East; and that a Grant for that Purpose might affect his future Possessions in the *East Indies*. As hereafter the Reader shall see, to the great Uneasiness of the *Portugueze*, proved to be the Case.

FROM this Time, the King of *Portugal* began to take the Title of, *Lord of Guinea*. The Custom till now had been to set up wooden Crosses in all the new Discoveries, but his Majesty ordered for the future, that Stone ones should be carried, with his own and the Captain's Name inscribed thereon; also the time when, by whom, and by whose Orders directed. The first of these Captains was *Diego Cam*, who in 1484, passing Cape *Catherine*, (the last of King *Alonso's* Discoveries) came to the River *Kongo* (in the Kingdom of the same Name) by the Inhabitants called *Zayre*. He went up the River, and saw on both Sides, Blacks, but they were not understood by those he carried with him. He found, by Signs, that they had a King, and that he resided far off, to whom he sent Presents. But finding the Men who carried them staid long, he set sail, bringing some Blacks home with him. King *John* was well pleased to see them, and giving them many Presents, sent them back again with the same *James Cam*; the first Part of whose Instructions was the Conversion of those Infidels. At his Arrival, he restored the Blacks to their Prince, and received the Men he left behind as Pledges. Pursuing the Discoveries, he ran twenty Leagues farther, setting up the Cross he called *St. Augustin's*, in thirteen Degrees of South Latitude, and another in twenty-two. At his Return to *Kongo*, he saw the King, who shewed such an Affection to the *Portugueze* and their Religion, that he sent the Sons of some of his chief Men with the Captain to *Portugal*, desiring they should be baptized and then returned with Ministers to instruct them in the Faith. They were baptized at *Beja*, where the King and Queen stood God father and God-mother to the chief of them, who was called *Don Juan*, his Heathen Name being *Zakuta*. The same Office was done by the Nobility for the rest, who took their Names and Surnames.

BETWIXT the Fort of *St. George* and *Kongo*, is the Kingdom of *Benin*; the King whereof thirsting after the Advantages, which he saw others reap by the *Portugueze* Trade, seigned an Anchi-

1484.

At this time the King of Portugal began to take the Title of Lord of Guinea.

Known discovered.

Discovered to 22 Degrees South.

The King of Benin.

Leave to build a House for his Men to dwell in, which was to be a Fort to offend them upon Occasion.

King John's Offers rejected.

Large Grants of Popes.

1484. nation to be converted, and desired Priests to instruct him. But they being sent, the Design was discovered not to be Religion but Covetousness: For these Heathens bought christened Slaves, and the *Portuguese*, with the same Avarice, sold them, after being baptized; knowing that their new Masters would oblige them to return to their old Idolatry. This scandalous Commerce subsisted till the religious King *John III.* forbade it, though to his great Loss. But God, (says our Author *de Faria*) who repays an hundred Fold, to requite him, ordered that another Gold Mine should be discovered below that of *St. George*.

Ogane a
puent Prince.

KING *John* was informed by the *Benin* Ambassador, who came to desire the Priests for their Instruction, that 250 Leagues beyond them, was the most powerful Prince of all that Country, called *Ogane*; by whom the Kings of *Benin*, for the Security of their Title, were confirmed, receiving from him a Staff with a Head, and a Cross like that of *Malta*, all of Brass, curiously wrought. An Ambassador was always sent with rich Presents, to solicit these Ensigns of Royalty for the *Benin* Kings. But he never sees *Ogane*, because he speaks from behind a Curtain; only at their Departure from the Audience, he shews a Foot, in Token that he grants their Request. The King of *Portugal* imagined this Prince might have been the same who is vulgarly called *Prester John*, the Formalities reported of both of them, had so near a Resemblance.

Sierra
Parda.

In 1486, three Ships were fitted out, commanded by *Bartholomew Diaz*, who had Orders to inquire after this *Prester John*. *Diaz* set up a Cross in twenty-four Degrees of South Latitude, 120 Leagues beyond the other Discoveries, in *Sierra Parda*. Hence he sailed in Sight of the Bay, called *de los Vaqueros*, or of *Herdsmen*, because of the many Cows they saw there. Beyond this they touched at the small Island or Rock called *Santa Cruz*, or *El Pennol de la Cruz*, so called from a Cross which he erected there. Twenty-five Leagues farther, they came into the Mouth of a River, which they called *del Infante*, the Sur-name of the second Captain, who first saw it. From hence they returned without hearing any News at all of *India*, the Inhabitants along those Coasts being a savage Sort of People. But to make Amends, in the Way, discovered that famous Promontory at the South-West End of *Africa*, which he called *Tormentoso*, or *Stormy*, because of a great Tempest they met with there: But at their Return, the King of *Portugal* changed that ominous Name into the more auspicious one, of *Cabo de buena Esperanza*, or *Cape of Good Hope*; on Account of the Hopes it gave of discovering the *Indies*, they having passed 140 Leagues beyond it. Here the Cross of *St. Philip* was set up. The

Cape of
Good Hope
discovered.

two first Ships coasting along, met the third, with only three Men aboard, out of nine which were in her nine Months before, when they left Company. The six missing had been killed by the Blacks; and of the three which remained, one died, with mere Joy of seeing the others again: A strange, but not unheard of Death. At length they arrived in *Portugal*; the Extent of Land, till this Time, found out, being 750 Leagues.

1486.

CHAP. III.

Portuguese sent to discover the East Indies by Land, with a more particular Account of the first Settlements made in Mandinga, Guinea, and Congo.

BEFORE *Diaz* set out on his Voyage, King *John* had sent *Antonio de Lisboa*, a *Franciscan* Friar, and a Layman, to find out a Way to *India* by Land but not being able to proceed, for Want of understanding the *Arabic*, they went no farther than *Jerusalem*, and then returned. The Discovery of the Cape giving new Life to the Affair, the King sent two of his own Servants, Men of Abilities, to prosecute that Design: One, *Pedro de Covillam*, the other *Alonso de Payva*. They both understood the *Arabic*; and had, in Charge, to discover the Country of *Prester John*, as well as that from whence the Drugs and Spices came which the *Venetians* traded in. They were likewise to enquire, whether there was any sailing from the *Cape of Good Hope* to *India*; and to take Notes of every Thing they could learn relating to that Navigation. They had a Chart given 'em also, taken from a Map of the World, made by *Casparus*, Bishop of *Lyseu*, an able Astronomer, with 500 Crowns in Money; and a Letter of Credit for more, whenever they should stand in Need of it in foreign Countries. They set out in May, 1487, and passing first to *Naples*, sailed from thence to the Isle of *Rhodes*, where there were *Portuguese* Knights of that Order. Crossing over to *Alexandria*, they went to *Kairo* as Merchants; and so on with a Karawan of *Moors* of *Fex* and *Tromesen*, to *Tor* or *al Tur*, on the *Red-Sea*, at the Foot of Mount *Sinai*, in *Stony Arabia*, where they were informed of the Trade to *Kalikut*; and sailing to *Aden*, without the Gulph, parted: *Covillam* towards *India*, and *Payva* for *Æthiopia*, or *Abassina*, resolving at an appointed Time, to meet again at *Kairo*. From *Aden*, *Covillam* went in a *Moorish* Ship of *Kananor*, to that City; and from thence to *Goa*: Being the first *Portuguese* that ever was in the *Indian* Seas. From thence he passed to *Sofala*, on the East Coast of *Africa*, to view the Gold Mines; where he got Intelligence of the Isle of *St. Lawrence*, called by the *Moor*, *The Isle of the Moon*. From *Sofala*, he went back again to *Aden*, and so to *Ægypt*. Being arrived at

India discovered by
Land

Covillam &
Travel

1487. *Grand Cairo*, he found by the Letters which he received from King *John*, that his Companion was dead. These Letters were brought by two *Jews*, who had been sent after them; the one *Rabbi Abraham of Beja*, the other *Joseph of Lamego*. *Covillam* sent back the latter to inform the King of his Success; with the other, he went again to *Tor*, and thence to *Aden*: Where hearing of the Fame of the City of *Ormúz*, he sailed thither, and having observed what was most remarkable, he left the *Jaw* to follow the *Karawâns* of *Aleppo*; and returned to the *Red-Sea*, to put in Execution the Orders he had received by those Letters, to discover the Court of *Prester John*, (as the King of *Abassina* was then, through a Mistake, vulgarly called) where he was detained till the Year 1520, when the Ambassador *Don Rodrigo de Lima* arrived there. During his Detention, *Luke Mark*, an *Æthiopian* Priest, was sent by the King of *Abassina*. He came first to *Rome*, and thence to *Portugal*. This Priest's Information revived the King's Hopes and Desires: And he was sent back with an Account of the Means proper for settling a Correspondence between the two Nations^a.

Habish,
Ambassador.

Prince of
Jalof ar-
riest.

BEFORE *Luke* parted from *Portugal*, there arrived *Bemoi*, Prince of *Jalof*. He came with State, and was received accordingly. The Cause of his coming was this: *Biran*, who reigned in *Jalof*, resigned the Kingdom to his Brother *Bemoi*, as a Person in all Respects worthy of the Royal Dignity. But *Sibetab*, the elder Brother, envious of the other's Happiness, kills *Biran*; and seizing the Government, makes War upon *Bemoi*, who, with the Assistance of *Gonzalo Coelho*, sent by King *John*, upon the Hopes he gave of becoming a Convert, made some Resistance: But it being suspected, by his Delay of embracing Popery, that he was not sincere, the Captain was ordered to leave him, at which he conceived no small Grief. He gave such Excuses for not being presently baptized, as seemed sufficient, and losing soon after a Battle, he went to *Portugal* to seek a more favourable Turn of Fortune: Where immediately proselyting (with twenty-four Gentlemen of his Retinue) he was christened by the Name of *John*, after the King, who was his Godfather; and next Day gave him for Arms, *Purpure*, a *Cross* Or, *within an Orle* of *Portugal*. He in return did Homage to the King for all the Lands he should be possessed of. On this Occasion there were great Rejoicings; the *Portuguese* displaying their Magnificence in such Diversions as were most in Use at that Time: And *Bemoi*, with his Retinue, entertained them in his Turn, with Feats of Activity in Riding, Alighting, and Mounting upon a Speed; standing upright upon the Saddle, galloping; and some in their Career, took up Stones off the Ground; with many other Actions of a surprising Nature. When about to return, the King furnished him with twenty Caravels well manned and armed, as well to forward his Restoration, as to build a Fort on the River of *Sanaga*.

THE Province of *Jalof*, lies between the two famous Rivers *Gambia*, (or rather *Rio Grande*) and *Sanaga*; so called by the *Portuguese*, from a Prince, (or rather People) of that Name, whom they spoke with, when they discovered it. It has other Names in the several Countries through which it runs, and makes many Islands, most of which are inhabited only by wild Beasts. It is navigable 150 Leagues up; where a Ridge of perpendicular Rocks crosses it in such Manner, that the Water falling down forms an Arcade, under which Travellers pass dry: It is pleasant to behold, but the Noise is hideous to the Ears. The *Gambou* or *Rio Grande*, runs 180 Leagues, and carries more Water than the *Sanaga*. It is not navigable all the Way, but flows with less Hurry than the other; though it receives many Rivers, which water the Country of *Mandinga*. Both these Rivers abound with variety of Fish, besides Crocodiles, Horses and Serpents with Wings: Their Banks are stored with Elephants, Ounces, wild Boars, and other Creatures, as wonderful for the Greatness of their Numbers, as the Variety of their Forms. The Waters of the two Rivers mixed, cause Vomiting; which drank separately, have not that Effect.

IN this Part of *Africa* is that great Cape, called *Cabo Verde*, probably the same with *Ptolemy's Assnarium Promontorium* in about fourteen Degrees of North Latitude. The Country runs 170 Leagues to the Eastward; is very fruitful, and contains many populous Cities. To *Tomboto* (or *Tombuktú*) the Mart of *Mandinga* Gold, resort the Merchants of *Grand Cairo*, *Tunis*, *Oran*, *Tremizan*, *Fez*, *Morocco*, and other Places. This Trade moved King *John* to build the Fort on the River *Sanaga*. The twenty Caravels were commanded by *Pedro Vaz de Cunna*, who, landing with *Don John Bemoi*, began to raise the Fort in the Place assigned: But either suspecting that King deceived him, or fearing to die in the Country, he basely killed him; endeavouring with that foul Crime, (says my Author, who never spares his Countrymen) to hide another not so heinous; which was, to return without finishing the Work; and so all this Preparation came to nothing.

THE *Kongo* Ambassador, being well instructed in the *Romish* Faith, was sent home in 1490, with three Ships. The first Land they made was *Sena*, and arrived safe at *Kongo*: Where they were joyfully received by an old Lord, called *Mani Sogo*,

1487.

River S.
120

And Coun-
bca.

Cape Verde.

King Bemoi
murdered.

^a Castaneda, p. 2. ^b Near Byburt, a Town on the River *Sanaga*, almost opposite to the Island of *St. Lewis*, in the Mouth of that River.

1497.
 King of
 Congo
 baptiz'd.

King of
 Congo.

And his
 Queen bap-
 tized.

Portuguese
 Popery
 again.

Columbus
 arrives at
 Lisbon.

who desired to be baptized, and was christened by a his Service to King John, who having slighted him then, looked on him now with Regret. John treated Columbus with great Respect; and though some offered to kill him, as well as to punish his boldness for Words spoken, as to conceal his Discoveries from Spain, yet was he sent away with Honour. However, King John was much troubled at this Discovery, fearing it was Part of what he was intitled to by the Pope's Grants, and the Portuguese had been so long in Quest of. This caused him to fit out a Fleet, commanded by Don Francisco de Almeida, afterwards Viceroy of India, in order to oppose those Proceedings; which the same Year were supported by a Donation from the Pope, of all Discoveries Westward to the Crown of Castile. This farther alarmed the King. Several Embassies passed on both Sides to agree this Business, which at last was brought to a Conclusion, as will be shewn in the second and third Parts.

THE Prince, who had been absent in the Wars, was on his Return baptized also, and called Alfonso. But Panso Aquitimo, the King's second Son, would not change his Religion; and the Father falling off, because he could be allowed but one Wife, resolved to leave the Crown to him, in Wrong of the Prince, who continued constant. Alfonso was abroad in Banishment, when his Father died, but returning to Court, was received as King. Aquitimo having Recourse to the Sword, with a great Multitude, fell upon him when he had but thirty-seven Christians, as well Portuguese as Blacks: Yet was the Invader defeated, and being also taken, was put to Death by the Brother, who was not become more humane by becoming a Romanist.

ALFONSO established in Peace, destroyed all his own Country Idols, to make Room for those of another, and propagated his new Faith with great Zeal. He sent his Sons, Grandsons, and Nephews to Portugal to study: Two of whom were afterwards Bishops in those Parts. In Memory of the Victory, and other Circumstances already mentioned, the King took for his Arms, Gules a Cross Fleury Argent, between two Crosses Puttee, charged with the Arms of Portugal.

THE Beginning of the Year 1493, came into the River of Lisbon, Christopher Columbus, who had been on his West Indian Discovery, wherein he was employed by the King, or rather Queen of Spain, and had brought from one of the Islands, some Men, Gold, and great Tokens of Riches. This great Man some Time before, had offered

him then, looked on him now with Regret. John treated Columbus with great Respect; and though some offered to kill him, as well as to punish his boldness for Words spoken, as to conceal his Discoveries from Spain, yet was he sent away with Honour. However, King John was much troubled at this Discovery, fearing it was Part of what he was intitled to by the Pope's Grants, and the Portuguese had been so long in Quest of. This caused him to fit out a Fleet, commanded by Don Francisco de Almeida, afterwards Viceroy of India, in order to oppose those Proceedings; which the same Year were supported by a Donation from the Pope, of all Discoveries Westward to the Crown of Castile. This farther alarmed the King. Several Embassies passed on both Sides to agree this Business, which at last was brought to a Conclusion, as will be shewn in the second and third Parts.

THOUGH Prince Bemoi was dead, the Hopes of making a farther Progress in that Country, about Sanaga, did not die with him. They who went in the last Fleet, had not, 'tis true, performed what they were sent about, but however they discovered more Land, and gained the good Will of the Natives. The Trade was afterwards continued, and a good Correspondence carried on between the King of Portugal and those African Princes. Pedro de Evora, and Gonzalo Anex, went to those of Tukuroi and Tombotu. Roderigo Rebelo, Pedro Reynel, Juan Colaco, and others, carried Presents to Mandimansa and Temala, Chiefs of the Fuli, the most warlike of all the Inhabitants of these Parts. King John corresponded likewise with the Prince of the Moses, a People very famous in that Age. Also with Mohammed, Ebn Manzugul, Grandson of Muza, and King of Songo, (a populous City of Mandinga) who having been thoroughly informed concerning the King of Portugal, said, that none of the 444 Kings, from whom he was descended, had any Knowledge of more powerful Monarchs than four, which were those of Al Yaman (or Happy Arabia) Baldac (or Baghdad) Grand Cairo (or Kabera) and Tukuroi.

AT this Juncture, the King laboured to settle a Factory in the City of Whaden, seventy Leagues to the Eastward of Arguim, as well for the Trade of Gold, as to have some Intelligence of Prester John, which he endeavoured by all Means to procure. Many were sent by Land on these Discoveries: But Death put a stop to King John's farther Progress in Enterprizes, which to his eternal Glory, fixed the Sovereignty of Portugal in Guinea, a Country abounding in Gold, Ivory, and all other Riches; and the Gate which opened a Way to the most heroic Actions afterwards, performed by the Portuguese, who now prepared in earnest to discover India by Sea.

1493.

Embassies to
 African
 Princes.

1497.
De Gama.

CHAP. IV.

Vasco de Gama's Voyage to India in 1497, being the first performed by the Portuguese round Africa.

SECT. I.

An Account of the Voyage, and what happened till his Arrival at Kalekût.

Castanneda's
History.

THIS Voyage of De Gama is related by several Authors, as Juan de Barros, Ramusio, Maffi, Faria y Sousa, and others; but our Extract is taken chiefly from Hernan Lopes de Castanneda, who has written *The History of the Discovery and Conquest of the East Indies by the Portuguese*, in eight Tomes.

THIS Book has gone through several Impressions, besides those of 1553 and 1561, in Portuguese, each in two Volumes, Folio. We have met with one in French, printed at Paris, 1553, in Quarto. In 1578, an Italian Version of it was published at Venice, in two Volumes, Folio. Afterwards the first Book was translated into English by Nicholas Lichfield, and printed at London, in 1582, in Quarto, black Letter, containing 163 Pages, (the Leaf being numbered only on one Side) besides the Dedication of the Translator, (which is to Sir Francis Drake, but contains nothing worth Notice) and of the Author, to Don Juan III King of Portugal, wherein he assigns his Reason for writing; which was to preserve the Memory of those first Expeditions of the Portuguese to the East Indies, and prevent it from being lost, as he observes, on the same Occasion, that for Want of the same Care, the Actions of several Nations had been: Among the rest those of the Spaniards in rescuing their Country from the Moors; and of the Kings of Portugal, Don Alonso, or Alfonso Henriques, Don Sancho his Son, and Don Alonso, who recovered the Kingdom of Portugal, and the Algarves. Of all which Transactions, he says, there scarce remained any Remembrance. He then observes, that even with Regard to the Discovery and Conquest of the Indies, there were no more than four Persons living (among whom himself was one) who had any Knowledge thereof; and that had those Persons died, the Memory of those great Achievements might have been buried in Oblivion.

In Author's
copy.

THE Author was the better qualified to write this History, in Regard he had been in the Indies, (where he went with his Father, who was sent there in Quality of a Judge) and made it his Business, when he was there, to inform himself of

a every Thing that related to the Conquest and Discovery thereof, by conversing with divers Gentlemen and Officers, who were either present in the Actions, or gave Directions for carrying them on. He likewise had the Perusal of many Letters and Pamphlets, written by Persons of Credit. The like Care he took on his Return to Portugal, which he travelled over, for that Purpose, at his own Expence, having spent most Part of his Life in procuring Materials for compiling this History, which he finished, with some other Works, at leisure Hours, in the University of Coimbra, where he was then employed in the King's Service. De Faria y Sousa, in his Catalogue of Authors, (at the End of his third Volume) at the Head of whom Castanneda stands, says, he went into India only to examine into the Truth of what he wrote; and that though neither his Style, being very tedious, nor his Geography are commendable, he hath many curious Remarks.

1497.
De Gama

KING Emanuel of Portugal inherited, not only his Predecessor's Kingdom, but his earnest Desire of finding a shorter and freer Passage by Sea to the East Indies, than that by Land. On the other hand, the Prosecution of the Enterprize was condemned by the generality of People, who being incapable of thinking justly, are easily deterred from prosecuting the most promising Undertakings. They renewed the Objections which had been raised at Cape Verde, and had been confuted and raised again at every Cape in the Way to that of Good Hope, where once more they were for having the Discoveries stop. As if the Storms which happened to rise at the Time Diaz discovered it, were always to continue and prevent the Doubting of it. Though so many Difficulties, thought insuperable at the Beginning, were already surmounted, every new Obstacle was thought insuperable still. But King Emanuel determined to proceed, so long as the Men of Integrity and Penetration were on his Side, and knew nothing more was necessary to attain the desired Success, than to employ Persons of Resolution and Judgment to execute his Designs. He was in the Town of Estremoz, when he appointed one of his Servants, Vasco de Gama, born in Synis, a Sea Port, to command the Fleet he had determined to send out. This was a Gentleman of sufficient Quality, Ability, and Courage for such a difficult Enterprize; having already done the Kingdom great Service in Matters relating to Navigation. The King honoured him, expressing the great Confidence he had in him, and delivered him the Colours he was to carry, on which, was the Cross of the Mili-

Portuguese
renewed
Murmurs.

He mentions as Instances the Actions of the Assyrians, Medes, and Persians; of the Africans against the Romans; of the Suevi against Julius Cæsar. But the History of some of those Nations and their Affairs, had been committed to Writing; but were destroyed by the Greeks and Romans, or lost by other Accident. And the like might, for ought we know, have been the Case with the rest.

1497:
De Gama
De Gama
sets out for
India.

tary Order of Christ, and on which this worthy a Hero took the Oath of Fidelity.

HAVING received Letters for the Princes of the East, among others, the *Presler John*, and the *Samorin*, or King of *Kalekut*, he sailed from *Belem*, a League on this Side *Lisbon*, on Saturday the eighth of July, 1497, with only three small Ships and 160 Men. The Names of the Ships were the *St. Gabriel*, the *St. Raphael*, and *Berrio*; the Captains, *Paul de Gama*, Brother to *Vasco* and *Nicolas Nunnez*. There went also a Bark laden with Provisions, commanded by *Gonzalo Nunnez*; and a Caravel, whereof *Bartholomew Diaz* was Captain, going to *la Mina*. When they came in Sight of the *Canaries*, over-against *Rio del Oro*, in a very dark Night, they were taken with a great Storm, in which the Admiral was separated from them, but they met him again eight Days after, at *Cape Verde*, which before had been appointed a Place of Rendezvous, in case of such Accidents. Next Day the Fleet arrived at the Island of *Sant Jago*, and anchoring at *Santa Maria*, repaired the Damages done by the late Storm, and took in Water. The third of August, *Diaz* returned home, and the Fleet proceeded on their Voyage. After having suffered extremely by tempestuous Weather, (in which they often gave themselves over for lost) on the fourth of November, they discovered a low Land; and passing along it, on the seventh, came into a great Bay, which they called *Angra de Santa Elena*, according to Custom, because first seen on that Saint's Day.

Arrived at
St. Helena.

THE People of this Bay^a were Blacks, little of Stature, and ill-favoured. When they spoke, it seemed as if they sighed. They were clothed with Skins of Beasts, in the Fashion of *French Cloaks*; and carried their Members in wooden Cases, which were very well made. Their Arms were oaken Staves hardened with Fire, and pointed at the Ends with Horns of Beasts. (They lived on Roots, Sea Wolves, Whales, (of which there is great Plenty) Mewes, and Sea Crows, Gazelas, Doves, with other Beasts and Birds; they had Dogs like those of *Portugal*. The General ordered Search to be made round the Bay for some River, but none was found: However, they met with Water four Leagues thence, at a Place which he named *Sant Jago*.

He lands.

NEXT Day the General, with the Captains, landed, with Intent to see what Sort of People they were; and whether they would inform them how far it was to the *Cape of Good Hope*, whereof the chief Pilot, *Pedro de Alonques*, was ignorant: By Reason, that when he went before in the same Quality with *Diaz*, they passed it without going near the Shore; and on their Return, putting to Sea from the Cape in the Morning, they passed the same in the Night with a fair Wind: How-

ever, he conjectured, they could not be above thirty Leagues distant at most. The General, in his Walks, took a Man, gathering Honey at the Foot of a Bush, and carried him on board, thinking he had got an Interpreter, but none of the Ship's Crew understood him. Next Day they set him ashore well apparelled, which so gained on his Countrymen, that the Day following, about fifteen of them came down towards the Ships; at Sight of whom, the General went ashore again, carrying with him Spice, Gold, and Pearl, to try those People: But finding by the little Account they made of such Things, that they had no Knowledge of them, he gave them Bells, little Tin Rings, and Counters, with which they seemed mightily pleased, and thence-forward, repaired every Day to the Shore.

1497.
De Gama

FERNANDO VELOSO having a Mind to see their Towns, and their Manner of Living, got Leave of the General to go up the Country with them. In their Way they took a Sea Wolf, which they roasted at the Foot of a Hill; but after Supper, caused *Veloso* to return to the Fleet, which was not far off; and as he observed they followed him, he made what Haste he could to the Water Side, and hailed to the Ships. The General hearing the Call, and seeing People making after *Veloso*, ordered the Boats ashore; which as soon as the Blacks perceived, they began to run, making a great Out-cry: The same did many others, who had hidden themselves among certain Bushes. This was their Policy, to draw the *Portuguese* to land, for presently after they returned, and furiously set upon them with their Darts and other Weapons: So that they forced the General and his Men, who had brought no Arms with them, to hasten into their Boats. Four *Portuguese* were wounded, and the General himself received a Hurt in his Leg, which he revenged from aboard, with Cross-bow Shot; but saw no more of those People afterwards.

His Men in
Danger.

THE sixteenth of November, in the Forenoon, they departed with a South-West Wind; and the eighteenth, in the Evening, came in Sight of the *Cape of Good Hope*; which bearing South-East, and the Wind being contrary, they stood out to Sea: But at Night, again tacked about towards Shore, and thus sailed till the twentieth; in which Time they doubled the Cape, sounding their Trumpets, and making several Diversions for Joy. In passing along this Coast, they saw abundance of large and small Cattle in good Case. Within Land, there are Towns and Villages; the Houses of Earth, covered with Straw, but none upon the Shore. The People are somewhat black, and use the same Apparel, Language, and Weapons, as those at *Angra de Santa Helena*. The Country is very pleasant, abounding with Trees and Water; also

Double the
Cape.

^a It lies a little to the North of the Bay of *Saldanna*, near the *Cape of Good Hope*. *Castaneda* calls it the Island of *S. Helena*, but 'tis a Voyage of three Weeks from thence to the Cape. on

1497
De GamaAngra de
San Blas.

on the South Side of the Cape, is a Harbour, a reaching six Leagues within Land, and is as many wide at the Entrance.

ON the twenty fourth, they came to *Angra de San Blas*, which is sixty Leagues beyond the Cape, and near the Island, where the Birds are called *Solitarios*, shaped like a Goose, but Wings resembling those of Bats. The People here resemble the former. They saw many large Elephants, and Oxen, whereof some have no Horns. On these the People ride, using Pannels stuffed with Rye Straw, as in *Spain*; and upon that a wooden Frame, as a Saddle. They thrust a Piece of Wood through the Noses of such as they intend to sell. On a Rock in this Harbour, about half a Mile from Shore, they saw at one time 3000 Sea Wolves, as large as Bears, with great and long Teeth. They are wild and fierce, assaulting Men if attacked. Their Skins are Proof against the Stroke of a Spear. They resemble Lions, and their young ones cry like young Kids. In this Rock also were many Stares, as large as Ducks, which bray like an Ass, but do not fly, having no Feathers in their Wings. Here all the Provisions were taken out of the Bark, which was then burned, as the King had ordered.

The Inhabitants.

A FEW Days after their Arrival, there appeared about ninety of the Inhabitants, some on the Sands, and others on the Mountains; whereupon the General landed all his Men well armed, remembering what had happened at *Sant Elena*. The Boats drawing near, he ordered to be thrown on Shore little Bells, which the negroes took up; and some came so nigh as to receive them out of his own Hand. This he wondered at, because *Diaz* had informed him, that when he was there, they would not come near him. He then ventured ashore with his Men, and exchanged some red Night-caps with the Blacks for Ivory Bracelets. A few Days after, there came down above two hundred Blacks, with twelve Oxen, and four Sheep; and as the *Portuguese* went ashore, they began to play upon four Flutes, accompanied with several Voices, making agreeable Musick; whereupon the General ordered the Trumpets to sound, and his Men danced along with them. Thus the Day passed in Mirth and Feasting. Not long after, many more Blacks, Men and Women, came again with Cattle. The *Portuguese* having bought one Ox, perceived some young Negroes behind the Bushes, who had with them the Weapons of the old ones. The General suspecting some Treachery, ordered his People to retire to some more secure Place. The Blacks, at the same Time, went along the Shore, keeping Pace with the Boats till they came to the Place, where the *Portuguese* landed in Armour. The Blacks then joined themselves in a Body, as if they intended to fight. But the General unwilling to

do them any Harm, withdrew in his Boats; only ordering two Brass Pieces of Ordnance to be shot off to scare them: Whereat they were so amazed, that they ran away in Confusion, leaving their Weapons behind. After this, sending some of his Men on Shore to erect a Pillar, inscribed with the King of *Portugal's* Arms and a Cross, the Negroes pulled it down before their Faces.

1498.
De Gama.

THEY departed the eighth of *December*; and soon after met with a dreadful Storm. The sixteenth of that Month they saw certain small Rocks sixty Leagues beyond the Harbour of *San Blas*. This Country is very pleasant to the Sight, abounding with Cattle: And the farther they advanced along that Coast, the taller and fairer the Trees were; which the Sailors could perceive, they sailed so near the Shore. Next Day they passed by the Rock *De la Cruz*, five Leagues farther, where *Diaz* set up his last Mark. There are great Currents hereabouts, occasioned by this Rock; but having a strong Wind they passed through them, as *Diaz* before had done, which greatly encouraged *De Gama*. On *Christmas Day*, 1498, they saw Land, which, for that Reason, they called *Tierra de Natal*: After this they came to a River called *de los Reyes*, or *of the Kings*, for being first seen on the Day of *Epiphany*. Here *De Gama* left two Men to inform themselves of the Country, and give him an Account at his Return. To this Purpose, he carried with him some Malefactors, whose Punishments were changed for these Dangers. Here he dealt for some Ivory and Provisions, so much to the Satisfaction of the Blacks, that their King came aboard.

A fine Coast

Tierra de
Natal.

THE eleventh of *January*, drawing near Land, they went in their Boats along the Coast to view it; where they saw a great Company of Men and Women, all of large Stature, who appeared to be a quiet civil People. *De Gama* commanded *Martin Alonso*, (who spoke several Languages of the Negroes) and another to land. They being well received by their Chief or King, the General sent him a Jacket, a Pair of Stockings, and a Cap, all of them red, with a Copper Bracelet, which he received with Pleasure; promising in Return any Thing which his Country afforded, at the same Time, inviting *Alonso* and his Companion to his Town. *De Gama* having given his Leave, *Alonso* who spoke the Language, went forward with the King; whose Subjects, on the Way, beheld him in his new Habit with Admiration, clapping their Hands for Joy three or four Times, before they reached the Town. After they had entered it, the King went round the same, that the Inhabitants might behold his Finery. Then going to his House, where *Alonso* was lodged, they had for Supper a Hen, and boiled Millet. Here many Negroes came to see them; and next Day they were sent back with some Blacks laden with Hens

A civil
People

1498.

De Gama

Hens for the General, who returned Thanks, and called it, *The Land of Good People*. The Houses of the Town were all of Straw, and well furnished, the Females were more numerous than the Males, for among twenty Men there were forty Women. Their Weapons are long Bows, with Arrows and Darts of Iron. On their Arms and Legs they wear Copper Bracelets, and Pieces of Copper in their Hair. They have also Daggers, the Hafts or Handles of Pewter, and the Sheaths of Ivory, whence it appears, that the Country affords Plenty of Copper and Tin. They make Salt of Sea Water, which they carry in Gourds, to Pits dug for that Purpose. They were so fond of Linen, that they gave a large Quantity of Copper for a Shirt, and so tractable, that they brought Water to the Boats, from a River called *Cabio*, a Quarter of a Mile distant from the Place where the *Portuguese* took in Water.

Cape Corrientes.

DEPARTING the fifteenth of *January*, they went along a low Coast, full of very high and large Trees, as far as *Cabo de Corrientes*, or *The Cape of Currents*, and without seeing the Town of *Sesala*, they went on fifty Leagues beyond, and on the twenty-fourth, came into a River very wide at the Entrance. Here *De Gama* and *Coello* went up in their Boats. The Land was low like the former, and covered with Water, abounding in tall Trees, laden with Variety of Fruits. Farther on they found several Boats, with Sails made of Palm. It was an Encouragement to the *Portuguese* to see these People, in Regard they understood something of Sailing; a Thing they had not met with before in all these Coasts. The Natives came in their Boats to the Ships, which they entered without any Fear, and behaved as familiarly as if the *Portuguese* had been old Acquaintance: They were of a good Size, but black, and went naked, with only a Piece of Linen Cloth hanging before. They were kindly used by the General, who gave them little Bells, and other Things, talking with them by Signs; for none on board understood their Language. After this they returned in their Boats with others, bringing Provisions, and more came along the Water Side, among whom were some pretty handsome Women, dressed like the Men. Each had three Holes in her Lips, with three Bits of Tin in them, which is a mighty Fashion there. They took with them some of the *Portuguese* to make merry at a neighbouring Town, where they got their Water. The third Day, two Noblemen came in their Boats to visit the General, appalled no better than the rest, only their Aprons

Rio de Buenos Sinay, & Co Cuanan.

were larger. One of them wore on his Head an Handkerchief wrought with Silk, and the other a green Satin Cap*. *De Gama* received them courteously, inviting them to eat, and gave them Apparel, with other Things. But they seemed by their Looks, to set no Value on them. However it appeared from certain Signs made by a young Man, that they were of a distant Country, and had seen as large Ships as those they were then in. When they were landed, they sent some Pieces of Calico to sell. *De Gama* rejoiced at these lucky Tokens, called this River *Rio de Buenos Sinays*, or of good Signs, and erected a Mark. Here they also brought their Ships aground and repaired them. Mean while, many of the Men sickened, through the Badness of the Air, or Provisions, their Hands and Feet being bloated, and their Gums swelling out of their Mouths, that they could not eat; but rotting, the Stench that proceeded from them, was intolerable. For this there was no Cure but Cutting, and many died thereof.

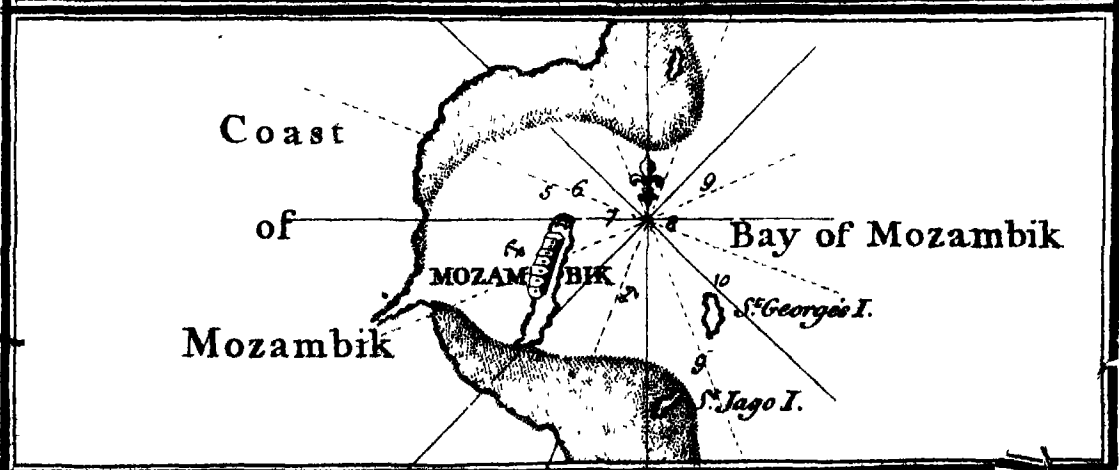
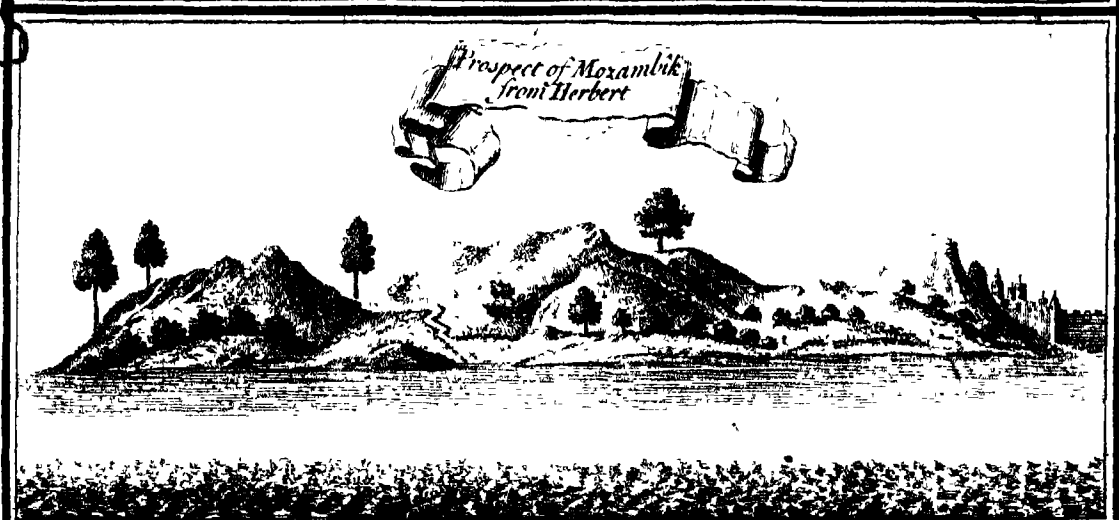
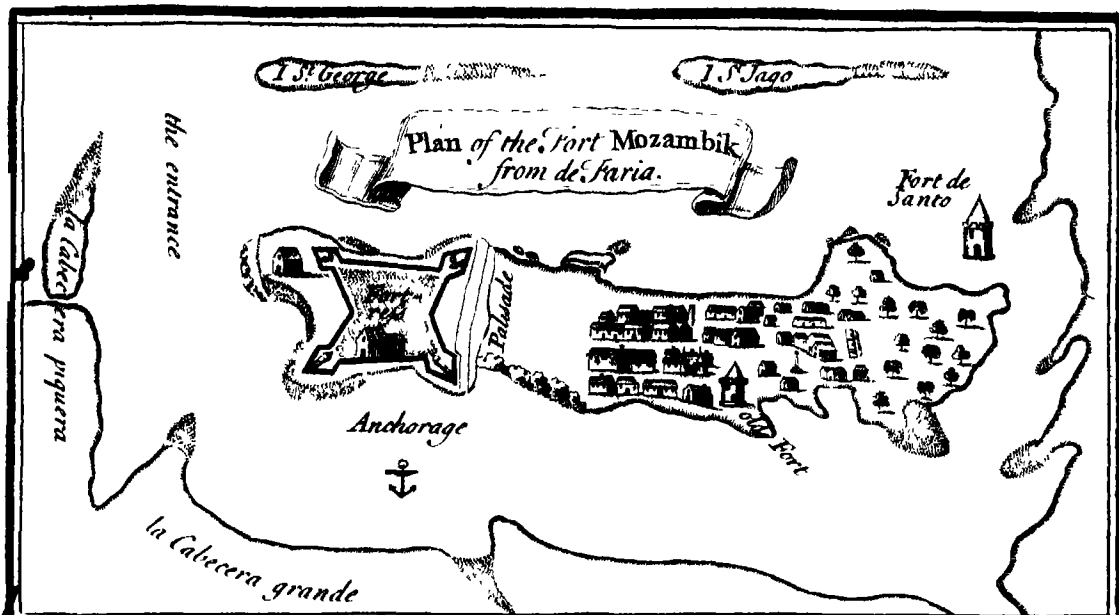
1498.

De Gama.

THEY left the River of *Good Signs* the twenty-fourth of *January*. Next Day they passed by three Islands, two of them full of Trees. The first of *March*, they saw four Islands, two near the Shore; from one of which there came forth seven or eight *Zambucos*, or little Boats, which following the Ships, called out, and made Signs, that they might stay for them. As soon as they were at Anchor, the Boats came up. The People in them were of a good Stature, somewhat black, clothed with Calico, striped with several Colours, some wearing it close to their Knees, and others on their Shoulders like Cloaks, and on their Heads Linen [Turbans] wrought with Silk and Gold. They had Swords and Daggers like the *Moors*; and brought with them their Instruments called *Sagbutts*. They came aboard, and conversed as freely as those before-mentioned, speaking in the Language of *Algaravia* [or *Arabic*] nor would be thought to be *Moors*. They eat and drank heartily. Being asked by one, who spoke the Language, What Country that was? They said, it belonged to a great King, and that the Island was called *Mozambik*, where there was a Town full of Merchants, who traded with the *Moors* of *India* for Spices, Precious Stones, and other Commodities; offering to conduct the Ships into the Harbour. Whereupon *Coello*, having the least Ship, was sent to found the Bar, which he passed, after striking near the Entrance, and anchored a Quarter of a Mile from the Town situated in that Island.

Mozambik

* *De Faria y Sousa* gives a somewhat different Account. He says, the People of this River were not so black as the others, and understood the *Arabic* Language, that the *Portuguese* judged them to be more civilized by the Habits they wore, which consisted of divers Sorts of Stuffs, both Cotton and Silk, of several Colours, and that they were told by them, that to the Eastward lived white People, who sailed in Ships like theirs.



1498.
De Gama.The Compass
and Charts
in Use here.

THIS Town of *Mozambik* stands in fifteen Degrees South: There is a very good Harbour, with Plenty of Provisions. It is inhabited by *Moors*, who trade to *Sofala*, the *Red Sea*, and *India*, in great Ships which have no Decks, and are built without Nails; the Timber being sewed together with Cayro, (or Ropes made of Coco Husks) their Sails are Mats made of Palm Tree Leaves. Some of them made Use of the Compass of a square Figure: They have also Charts. The Land about the Town is low and unhealthy. The Houses are built with Hurdles, only that of the Sheikh, and the Masjid, or Mosk, had Walls of Mud. The Inhabitants were Foreigners and *Mohammedans*: The Natives of the Continent are black. This Place was ever much esteemed by the *Portugueze*, as being a most secure Port to winter in. It lies between *Quiloa* to the North, and the Mine of *Sofala* to the South.

King visits
De Gama.

THE Sheikh, and the rest of the *Moors*, taking the *Portugueze* for *Turks* or *Moors* of some other Place, immediately visited *Coello* in his Ship, but stayed not long, because there was none aboard who understood the Language. The rest of the Ships having entered the Harbour, he sent them Presents and Provisions, desiring Leave to come aboard. *De Gama*, in Return, sent him red Hats, short Gowns, Coral, Brass Basons, Hawks Bells, and other Things, which he made slight of; asking what such Things were good for, and why the General did not send him Scarlet? *De Gama*, to prepare against his Coming, ordered all the sick Men to be kept out of Sight; and all that were found in the rest of the Ships, to be sent to his: Causing them to be secretly armed, to prevent any Surprise from the Sheikh or his Attendants; who came well dressed in Silk, with Ivory Trumpets, and other Instruments, playing all the while. He was tall and lean. He had on a kind of Shirt, which came down to his Heels, and over it another of *Mekka* Velvet. On his Head, a Silk Cap of various Colours, trimmed with Gold. At his Girdle he wore a Sword and Dagger, and upon his Feet, Silk Shoes. The General received him at the Entrance of the Ship, and brought him with some of his People, into the Cabin, the rest remaining in the Boats. *De Gama* apologized for not sending him Scarlet, as having brought none with him. The Sheikh and his Company eat and drank very heartily of the Banquet prepared for them. He asked, whether they were *Turks*, because they were White; and desired a Sight of their Bows, and Books of their Law. *De Gama* answered, they were not from *Turky*, but of a great Kingdom bordering thereon; that they had no Books of their Law with them. But he shewed them certain Cross-bows,

Supposing
them to be
Turks.

which were shot off before him; with some Armour, which he wondered at. At this Meeting, *De Gama* had Intelligence, that from thence to *Kalekut*, where nine hundred Leagues, and that it was necessary for him to take a Pilot of this Country to conduct him, on Account of the many Shoals in the Way. He understood also, that *Prester John's* Country was far from thence within Land. *De Gama* then requested two Pilots of the Sheikh, lest one should die. The Sheikh made him a Promise of such; and at another Visit brought them with him. To each was given thirty Crowns and a Coat; and one of them was to remain continually aboard, while they stayed in the Harbour.

1498.
De Gama.

NOT WITHSTANDING all this seeming Friendship, the *Moors* finding, that *De Gama* and his Men were not *Turks*, but *Christians*, contrived to destroy them, and take their Ships. This having been discovered to them by one of the Pilots, *De Gama* thought fit to remove to an Island, a League from *Mozambik*. The Ships being thus secure against any Attempt, *De Gama* went in his Boat to *Mozambik*, to demand the other Pilot. Presently several Boats with armed *Moors* approached, calling to them to come into the Harbour, which the Pilot in *De Gama's* Boat advised him to do; for that otherwise the Sheikh would not deliver the Pilot who was on Shore. *De Gama* supposing, that he gave that Advice in order to escape, commanded the Men to confine him, and shoot at the Boats with Ordnance. This alarming the Ships, they moved forward to the General's Assistance, which the *Moors* seeing, fled too fast to be overtaken.

De Gama is
desires to

A FEW Days after, a white *Moor* came on board the Ships from the Governor, expressing Concern at the Breach of Amity, and offering to renew the same; which the General refused, unless his Pilot should be sent him. Soon after, there came a *Moor* with his Son, desiring to be carried to *Melinda*, (lying in the Way to *Kalekut*) in order to return to *Mekka*, from whence he said he came as a Pilot; telling *De Gama*, that it was in vain to wait for an Answer from the Sheikh, who, he was assured, would make no Peace with him as being a Christian. The Ships being in Want of Water, they entered the Harbour of *Mozambik* a second Time, and with their Boats took it away by Force; the *Moors* keeping at a Distance for Fear of the Ordnance. The twenty-fourth of March, a *Moor* braving the Fleet from the Shore, *De Gama* to revenge that, and other Injuries, manned out the Boats with Ordnance; and after driving a Body of *Moors* from the Shore, who came to oppose his Landing, and taking a few, (among whom there happened to be a Pilot)

Attempts to
conjure them.*De Faria* puts it in 1493 30'.

E

destroyed

1498.
De Gama

Notes of St
G. 15

destroyed the Town with their Guns, in such a Manner, that the Inhabitants left it, and fled into the Country.

THE twenty-seventh they departed, and came to the two little Rocks of *St George*. The first of *April*, they came to certain Islands very near the Shore, the first whereof they called *Asotado*, because there the *Moor* Pilot was whipped for several Miscarriages, who after confessed, that his Design was to have cast the Ships away. The fourth, they had Sight of Land, and two Islands near it, with many Shoals, three Leagues beyond *Quilau*, which *De Gama* was sorry to have overshot, because the Pilots had told him, there were *Christians* in the Place. This they did with a Design to have brought them there to be slaughtered; for *De Gama* would have landed without any Distrust. The Pilots having laboured in vain to recover that Town, (the Winds and Currents being contrary) it was resolved at length, to go on to the Island of *Mombassa*, seventy Leagues farther North. In the Way, the *St. Raphael* ran aground, two Leagues from Land; but they got her off, giving those Shoals the Name of the Ship. Here some *Moors* from Land were taken on board, to be carried to *Mombassa*, where they arrived the seventh of *April*; and from that Moment his few Men who were sick, began to recover, the rest having died with Diseases.

Mombassa
described.

MOMBASSA is an Island close to the Continent, made by a River that falls into the Sea by two Mouths. Here is Plenty of Provisions, as Millet, Rice, Hens, and Cattle all very fat, chiefly their Sheep, which have no Tails. The Island is very pleasant, being full of Orchards, planted with Pomgranates, *Indian* Figs, Oranges of both Kinds, Lemons and Citrons. Here also is excellent Water. The City, which is governed by a King, is very large, seated on a rocky Hill, against which the Sea beats, so that it cannot be undermined. At the Entrance of the Port, and upon the Bar, is a little low Fort near the Water. Most of the Houses are built with Stone, like those of *Spain*, and the Cielings wrought in Figures with Plaster of *Paris*; the Streets are very fair. The Inhabitants are *Moors*, some white, others brown, and appear to be good Horsemen. They go richly dressed, especially the Women, who wear Silk Gowns adorned with Gold and Jewels. There is a great Trade for all Sorts of Merchandize; and the Harbour, which is a good one, is continually full of Ships. From the Land there comes Ivory, Wax, and Honey.

Artifice of
the Arabs

As the Ships lay without the Bar, in the Night a Bark approached, with about a hundred Men, armed with Swords and Targets; who coming up would all have entered: But *De Gama* would

1498.

De Gama.

suffer only four to come aboard, and those without Arms; excusing his Precaution, as being a Stranger to the Coast. They were entertained handsomely. They said the King was apprized of their Arrival, and would send to visit them next Day. They promised to load his Ships with Spices, and told the General, there were many *Christians* in the Island, which agreeing with the Report of the Pilots, *De Gama* believed to be true. However, he kept upon his Guard. Next Day the King sent to compliment the General on his Arrival, with certain Presents of Fruit; and to tell him, there were many *Christians* in the Island, (which the Messengers feigned themselves to be) and that if he would come into the Harbour, he should have whatever he stood in Need of. *De Gama*, believing them to be sincere, treated them very kindly, and sent them back with Thanks and Presents to the King. He sent with them also Men to observe the Place. The King shewed no great State, but received them well, and ordered some *Moors* to shew them the City. In their Way they saw many Prisoners in Irons; and were carried to the House of two Merchants of *India*, who were *Christians*. The King sent them back with Samples of Spices and Corn; bidding them tell the General, he might have Gold, Silver, Amber, and other Commodities, in what Quantity he pleased, at a less Price than any where else.

ON their Return, it was resolved to accept of the Offer of Spices, and to lade here, in case they should not meet with a Market to their liking at *Kalekut*. Next Morning at Flood, they prepared to enter the Harbour; but *De Gama's* Ship striking on a Shoal, they cast Anchor again: Which, when the *Moors*, who were aboard, saw, they went into their Boat, believing the Fleet would not get into Port that Day. The two Pilots, at the same Instant, jumped into the Sea, and were taken up by the *Moors*, who could not be prevailed upon to return and deliver them. This gave *De Gama* a Distrust of the King, who indeed had heard of what had been done by the Fleet at *Mozambik*, and had resolved to be revenged. Two of the *Moors*, brought from *Mozambik*, being thereupon put to the Torture, by dropping hot Bacon upon their Flesh, confessed, that they had plotted the Destruction of the Ships; and that the Pilots had escaped, fearing the same had been discovered. In the Night, the Watch perceiving the Cable to shake, imagined it was caused by some Tunny, which are Plenty thereabouts; till looking more attentively, they found it was the *Moors*, who swam about, and were cutting it with their wooden Swords, in order that the Ship might run aground. Some also had got among the Tackle of the Foremast of another

Discovered
by Accident

1498. Ship: But on being discovered, they jumped into a and that he desired to make a League with him. 1498.
De Gama. the Sea, and made to the Boats, that lay at a The King returned an Answer to the General's De Gama.
Distance to receive them.

Arrive at
Melinda.

THE thirteenth, *De Gama* left *Mombassa*; and seven Leagues beyond, they overtook two Sambucos, (a Sort of little Pinnaces) which they pursued; taking one with seventeen *Moors* on board, and good Store of Gold and Silver. The same Day the Fleet came before *Melinda*; which is fifteen Leagues from *Mombassa*, in three Degrees South Latitude. The Harbour is almost an open Road; but there is a Ledge of Rocks whereon the Sea beats, which is the Reason Ships ride far from the Shore. The City is seated on the plainest Part of a rocky Coast, encompassed with Palms, and Woods of Fruit Trees, of which their Oranges excel for Taste and Size. They have plenty of Provisions, as Millet, Rice, Cattle, Sheep and Poultry, which are very good and cheap. The City is large, with fair Streets, and Houses of Stone, several Stories high, and terraced at Top with Lime and Earth. The Natives of the Country are very swarthy, strong, and well proportioned, with curled Hair. The Strangers who have settled there, are *Moors* of *Arabia*. They behave very well, especially the Gentlemen, who from the Waist downwards are cloathed with Silk, and Cotton Stuffs: Others wear short Cloaks of Calico; and on their Heads, a Sort of Turbans, wrought with Silk and Gold. Their Swords and Daggers are handsomely ornamented. They are all Left-handed, and never go without Bows and Arrows. For the Pastime of Shooting, being very good Archers. They also reckon themselves expert Horsemen, though the Proverb along these Coasts is, *The Horsemen of Mombassa, and the Women of Melinda*. For here the Women are very beautiful, and go richly dressed, in the same Manner as the Men; only on their Heads, they wear Veils, laced with Gold. Most of the Merchants who trade to this Place, are of *Kambaya*, or *Gufarat*, who bring Spices, Copper, Quicksilver, and Calico; which they exchange for Gold, Amber, Ivory, Pitch, and Wax. The King is a *Mohamedan*, and served with much greater State than the Kings of the Places they had been at before.

DE GAMA was overjoyed to see a City like those of *Portugal*, and anchored within a League of it. But there came nobody aboard, for Fear of being made Prisoners; knowing by the Pinnace newly taken, that their Visitants were *Christians*. *De Gama* therefore ordered an old *Moor*, (who was one of those in the Pinnace, and had promised to get him Pilots in this Place) to be left on a Shelf over-against the City; from whence a Boat came immediately to fetch him, as it was judged they would. Being carried before the King, he informed him of the General's Request; and that he desired to make a League with him.

1498.
De Gama.

The King returned an Answer to the General's Satisfaction, with a Present of three Sheep, many Oranges and Sugar Canes; which was returned by the Present of a Hat, (which in those Days was used) two Branches of Coral, three Brass Bassons, some little Bells, and two Scarves. Next Day *De Gama* went with his Ships nearer the City, and anchored by four *India* Ships of the *Christians*. Where the King sent to visit him in a more honourable Manner, with Notice, that he would visit him himself next Day, and that the Meeting should be upon the Water. Mean Time, the *Christians* from the *India* Ships, with the King's Leave, visited *De Gama*. They were well proportioned, and of a brown Complexion. They had on long Gowns of white Calico. Their Beards were large; and their Hair, which was long like that of Women, was platted under their Turbans. They had some little Knowledge of the *Arabic*, on Account of their Trade with the *Moors*; of whom they advised the General to be aware, and not too much confide in. On Sight of a Picture, representing the Virgin *Mary* and some Apostles, (which *De Gama* ordered to be brought, to try if they were *Christians*) they fell down and worshipped it, for which Purpose they repaired thither every Day, offering to the Images Pepper, and other Things. They eat no Beef. They came from *Cranganor*, but could give no Account of *Kalekut*.

NEXT Day in the Afternoon, the King of *Melinda* came in a great Boat. He had on a Gown of crimson Damask, lined with green Sattin, and a rich Scarf rolled round his Head. He sat in a beautiful Chair neatly inlaid with Wire, on a Silk Cushion, with another by him; on which lay a Hat of crimson Sattin. Near him stood an old Man, who carried a very rich Sword, with a silver Scabbard. There were with him about twenty *Moors* richly dressed; with Musicians who played on Sagbuts, and two Ivory Flutes, which were each eight Spans in length. They were very neatly made, with a little Hole in the middle, on which they played. *De Gama* went to meet the King in his Boat adorned with Flags, carrying with him twelve of the chief Men belonging to the Ships; and after many Salutations, at the King's Request, went into his Boat, where he was honoured as a Prince. The King viewed him and his Men very attentively, and inquired after the Country he came from, the Name of his King, and his End in coming into those Seas: Which Questions the General having answered, the King promised him a Pilot for *Kalekut*; and invited him to take the Pleasures of his Palace. But *De Gama* excused himself. Promising however to call there at his Return; and at the same

The King
visits him.

D. Gama
kindly re-
ceived

These Instruments resembled our *German* Flutes.

1498.
De Gama.

Time made the King a Present of the thirteen *Moors* not long before taken Prisoners; which the King received with greater Pleasure, as he said, than if the General had given him such another City as that of *Melinda*.

De Gama
arrives
at Kalkut.

AFTER this, the King rowed among the Ships, which he beheld with Surprize, and was greatly delighted with the Ordnance shooting off. Telling the General, he never saw any Men that pleased him so well as the *Portuguese*, and wished he had some of them to assist him in his Wars. At parting, the General let two Men accompany the King at his Request; and had in Pledge his Son, and an Ecclesiastick, whom they called *Kizi*. Next Day, *De Gama* and *Coello*, went with armed Boats along the Shore, to see the King's Horsemen run and skirmish. In a little Time, there came some Footmen from the King's Palace, which was in Sight, who taking him up in a Chair, carried him to the Boat of the General. To whom he spoke very courteously, and once more requested him to land, and go to the City, for that his Father, who was lame, was desirous to see him; offering to stay with his Children on board the Ship, as a Pledge, till he should come back: But *De Gama*, fearing to trust himself, still pretended that he durst not, as having no Licence from his Sovereign. The twenty-first of April, there came a Person of Rank from the King, to visit *De Gama*; who, not having seen any body from the City for two Days before, began to be troubled, and fear that the King was offended, on Account of his refusing to land. His Suspicions increased, when he found, that this Favourite brought no Pilot with him. Which the King being informed of, immediately sent him one called *Kanaca*, a Gentile of *Guzarat*, making an Apology for not having sent him sooner. This Pilot was (as *de Faria* observes) so expert in Navigation, that being shewn an Astrolabe, he took little Notice of it, as one who was used to more considerable Instruments: And indeed *De Gama* found the Compasses, Charts, and Quadrant in Use with the *Moors* about these Coasts.

He is a Pilot
for India.

Quits for
African
Coast.

DE GAMA, being provided with all Things necessary for his Voyage, departed from *Melinda* on Tuesday the twenty second of April, resolving now to quit the Shores, which hitherto he had coasted, and trust himself to the main Ocean, under the Conduct of this skilful Pilot. On the twenty-eighth, they saw both the South and North Poles, which latter, they had not seen for a long Time before. The Voyage was prosperous, and contrary to what is usual, without any bad Weather. They crossed that great Gulf of seven hundred Leagues, which lies between *Africa* and the hither Peninsula of *India*, in twenty-three Days. Friday, the seventeenth of May, they discovered Land, being a high Shore eight Leagues distant. Here the Pilot, with his Plummet, found forty-five Fathom Water. Then steering South-East, next Day he perceived, by small Showers which fell, that they were near the Coast of *India*, that being their Winter Season. The twentieth, he discovered the high Hills, which are over *Kalekut*; then going cheerfully to the General, demanded *Albricias*, saying, that was the Land which he and his People so greatly desired to see. *De Gama* overjoyed, gave *Kanaca* his Demand, and making a Feast on Shipboard, came to Anchor two Leagues below *Kalekut*, in an open Road; the City having no Harbour or Shelter for Ships.

SECT. II.

View of India at the Time of *De Gama's* Arrival.
He lands at *Kalekut*.

BEING now arrived in *India*, it may not be improper to give some general Account of it. This vast Country is commonly divided into three Parts, *Proper India*, or *Hindustan*, and the Peninsulas within and without the *Ganges*, called also, the hither and farther Peninsulas of *India*. *Proper India* is bounded by the River *Hind*, or *Indus*, (whence the Whole takes the Name) on the West; the River *Ganga*, or *Ganges*, on the East; *Tibet*, or *Tobt*, on the North; from whence 'tis separated by a vast Chain of Mountains, called by the Natives *Imax*, &c. (whence *Ptolemy's* *Imaus*), and on the South, by the hither Peninsula and Bay of *Bengal*. The two Peninsulas are washed on all Sides by the Ocean, except on the North, where they join the Continent. Each of these three Parts is of vast Extent, and contains several powerful Kingdoms. They are inhabited by Idolaters and *Mohammedans*. The Idolaters are the ancient *Indians*; and though they all follow the same Religion, which came originally from *Tibet*, yet they differ somewhat therein from each other in different Parts, as they do also in their Customs. The *Mohammedans* are originally *Arabs*, *Persians*, *Turks*, or *Tartars*; who successively conquered, and settled in *Proper India*, and on the Coasts of the two Peninsulas, with many of the Islands in the *Indian* Seas: These are generally comprehended, or rather confounded, under the corrupt Name of *Moors*, by *Europeans*, as appears from their several Voyages.

THE Country of *Proper India*, or *Hindustan*, at the Time the *Portuguese* landed at *Kalekut*, was divided into several Kingdoms; as those of *Multan*, *Debl*, or *Delli*, the chief (being then new-

Kale, (or *Kazi*, as the *Turks* and *Persians* pronounce it) is a Judge among the *Mohammedans*. *De Faria* calls him *Melema Kana*.

De
ly

1498. ly conquered by the *Chagatays* or *Moguls*) *Bengala*, a (5.) *Porka*. (6.) *Koulán*. (7.) *Tiavankor*, near 1498.
 De Gama. *Orixa*, *Manda*, *Chitor*, and *Guzarat*, commonly De Gama. called *Kambaya* ^a. The hither Peninsula of *Ganges* was divided into four great Parts, *Dekan*, *Kanara*, *Malabar*, and *Narfinga*, or *Bisnagar*, each subdivided into many Sovereignities. The chief Countries in the farther Peninsula were those of *Ava*, *Brama*, *Pegu*, *Siam*, *Kambodia*, *Champa*, *Kochin-china*, and *Tong-king*, or *Tonkin*.

Hither Pen- The Charts will point out to the Reader the several Places of Note on the Coasts of *India*, (as well as those along the Shores of *Arabia* and *Persia*) to be met with in the following Voyages. However, as the Western Coast of the hither Peninsula of the *Indies* was the more immediate Scene of the Actions of the *Portugueze*, who fixed their principal Settlements there; and several Alterations have happened since then in the State of that Peninsula, it will not be amiss to mention the Towns along the Coast, which fall within the several Divisions above-mentioned, proceeding from North to South.

Coast of Dekan. IN the Coast of *Dekan*, which began at the River *Bate*, that falls into the Sea towards *Bombaim*, and ended Southward at the River *Aliga*, containing the Space of seventy-five Leagues, are the Cities of *Chaul*, *Bandor*, *Dabul*, *Dibetele*, *Sintapori*, *Koropatan*, *Banda*, *Chapora*, and *Goa*.

Coast of Kanara. To the Coast of *Kanara*, extending from the River *Aliga* to Mount *Delli*, about forty-six Leagues, belonged these Towns and Ports, *Onor*, *Batekala*, *Barfelor*, *Baqualor*, *Mangalor*, and others.

Coast of Malabar. FROM Mount *Delli* to Cape *Komorin*, are ninety-three Leagues, comprising the Coast of *Malabar*, in which were seven Kingdoms, governed by Princes, who are *Bramens*, or *Genile Priests*: (1.) *Kananor*, with twenty Leagues of Coast, in which are the Towns of *Kota*, *Koulam*, *Nilchilam*, *Marabia*, *Bolapotam*, *Kananor* the Capital, *Tremapatam*, *Chela*, *Maim*, and *Purepatam*. (2.) *Kalekút*, extending twenty-seven Leagues, has these Towns; *Kalekút* the Metropolis, *Koulete*, *Chale*, *Parangale*, *Tanor*, (the Capital of a Kingdom, subject to *Kalekút*) and *Chatua*. (3.) The little Kingdom of *Kranganor*. (4.) *Kochin*.

^a Or *Kambay*, and by the Natives, *Kambaut*.

^b *De Faria* agrees nearly with this Account, only he says, that the King, (*Perimal*) after turning *Mohammedan*, gave the *Moors* Leave to build *Kalekut*; that in distributing his Kingdoms among his Relations, he to the chief of them gave *Koulán*, where he placed the Head of the Religion of the *Bramens*, and called him *Kobritum* which is the same as High Priest, and was translated to *Kochin*. To his Nephew he gave *Kalekút*, and all the Temporal Dominion, calling him *Zamorin*, that is, Emperor. In another Place, our Author affirms this Voyage of *Perimal* to *Mekka*, was a false Invention of the *Moors*; and says, that being a favourer of the *Christians* of *St Thomas* at *Kranganor*, his Pilgrimage was to *Milapour*. See *Portuguese Asia*, vol. 1. p. 100. Is not this a false Invention of the *Portuguese* Priests, to rob the *Mohammedans* of a Convert? Very likely, for by another Relation, (he must mean *Portuguese* Relation) he says, this *Perimal* was one of the three Kings who went to adore *Christ* at *Bethlehem*: See *Portuguese Asia*, vol. 2. p. 224. This is plainly a false Invention of the *Portuguese*, since he began his Voyage at least 347 Years after *Christ*, according to *de Faria's* own Account. Forgers are never satisfied; and by a certain Fatality, invent Stories to confute one another. Some Authors say, he was cast away in his Passage to the *Red-Sea*.

Original of Kalekut

1498.
De Gama.
De Gama
ambassadors be-
fore it

Interview
with B. M.
Taybo.

W. becomes
his Friend

DE GAMA came to anchor on the twentieth of May, about two Leagues from *Kaleküt*. Presently four *Almadias*, or Boats of Fishermen, (which is a Name for poor People in the *Indies*) came to the Fleet, admiring at the Make of the Ships, such as they had never before seen, and asking, Whence they came? They were brown, and all naked, excepting a little Piece of Linen before. *De Gama* received them well, and ordered some of their Fish to be bought: After which they conducted him to *Kaleküt*, where he cast Anchor without the Bar; and immediately sent on Shore one of his banished Men, in one of the *Almadias*, to get Intelligence of the Place, and sound how he should be received. The People presently thronged about him, asking many Questions of the Boatmen, but could not believe he was a *Moor*, as they had represented him, in Regard his Dress was so unlike that of the *Moors* who came from the Streights of *Mekla*, and he could not speak *Arabic*. However, they carried him to the House of two *Moors*, one of whom, called *Bontaybo*^a, could speak *Spanish*, and knowing him to be a *Portuguese*, accosted him, saying, *The Devil take you, what brought you hither?* After which he asked him several Questions seriously, relating to his Coming. Which being answered, *Bontaybo* said, he was acquainted with the *Portuguese* at *Tunis*, whence he came, but seemed astonished to think how the Ships could come by Sea thither. Then he asked, *What they came about?* The Man replied, *To look for Christians and Spices*. *Why*, said *Bontaybo*, *did not the Kings of France and Spain, and the Doge of Venice send Fleets on the same Errand?* Because, answered the other, *the King of Portugal would not give his Consent. He was much in the right of it*, returned *Bontaybo*; and after having made the Man eat, went along with him to see the General. At his first Approach, he spoke aloud in *Spanish*. *Good Luck! Good Luck! Many Rubies, many Emeralds. Thou art bound to give God Thanks, for that he hath brought thee where there are all Sorts of Spices and precious Stones, with all the Riches of the World.*

THE General and the rest were so surprized to meet with one who could speak their Language so far from home, that they wept for Joy. After which *De Gama* embraced *Bontaybo*; and sitting down with him, asked, *If he was a Christian, and how he came to Kaleküt?* The *Moor* told him what Religion he was of, and that he arrived at *India* by the Way of *Kayro*. He concluded, by speaking in Favour of the *Portuguese*, and saying, *That as he had on all Occasions before been their*

Friend, so he would continue to further them in their Designs, to the utmost of his Power. *De Gama* thanked him, and promised to reward him bountifully for whatever Service he should do him; declaring, he was overjoyed to meet with such a Friend, and that he believed God had sent him thither before them, in order to give Success to their Voyage. For that he was sensible, without his Assistance, he should be able to make nothing of it. Then, having asked him some Questions relating to the King of *Kaleküt*, *Bontaybo* told him, that he was a Prince of a very good Disposition, and made no Doubt but he would gladly receive him (the General) as Ambassador from a foreign King, especially if he came to settle Trade, and had brought any Merchandize with him. For that the King's Revenue chiefly arose from the Duties on Goods. He likewise informed *De Gama*, that the King was then at *Pananí*, a Village by the Sea, five Leagues from thence; and advised him to send his Majesty Notice immediately of his Arrival, which the General did, dismissing *Bontaybo* with Presents.

SECT. III.

De Gama invited to Court. His Audience of the Samorin.

THE *Samorin*, being informed by the Messengers, that the General had Letters to him from the King of *Portugal*, a *Christian* Prince, he sent to bid him welcome, and a Pilot to conduct him to *Padarane*, a Village, where there was a good Harbour for his Ships, with Notice withal, to go by Land to *Kaleküt*, where the King would be to receive him. *De Gama* accordingly removed to *Padarane*, but would not enter too far into the Port, for Fear of Treachery. Here an Order was sent him from the *Kutwál*^b, or Officer for foreign Affairs, giving him Permission to land whenever he pleased. *De Gama* then calling a Council, signified to them his Intention to go, and settle with the King a Treaty of Commerce and perpetual Amity. But his Brother was against it, alledging, that though the King and the Natives were *Christians*, (as they then imagined them to be) yet there were many *Moors* among them, who were always their mortal Enemies, and would now be more so, as considering them come to interfere in their Trade: That therefore as the Success of the Voyage, and the Safety of all the rest depended on his Life, he thought it more advisable to send some other Person in his Stead. Of the same Opinion were all the rest. But *De Gama* declared, let what would betide him, he would

^a *De Faria* calls him *Monzayde*. In some Places, the Office may differ. Governor of the Town, or Sheriff.

^b *Kutwál* signifies properly, the Governor of the Castle; but in different Places, the *Kutwál* seems to be the Criminal Judge, the Deputy Governor of the Town, or Sheriff.

1498. go himself; and that he would rather die, than a
 De Gama. return without carrying back sure Credentials of
 his having been at *Kalekut*. He built much also
 for his Security, on it's being the King's Interest,
 (as *Bontaybo* told him) to encourage Traders, and
 more upon the Notion, that the Inhabitants were
Christians. He ordered them however, in case
 any Accident happened to him, that they should
 immediately return home, and carry the News of
 the Discovery of the *Indies*.

1498. De Gama.
 in State.

NEXT Day, May twenty-eight, *De Gama* set
 out in his Boat furnished with Ordnance, attend-
 ed with twelve of his Company, the Flags wav-
 ing, and Trumpets sounding. The *Kutwal* wait-
 ed for him on Shore, attended with 200 Nayres,
 (or Gentlemen of the Country) and a Multitude
 of People. He was received very politely at
 landing, where there were two Litters, one for
 him, the other for the *Kutwal*; into which enter-
 ing, they put forward, being carried on Mens
 Shoulders at a swift rate, all the rest going on
 foot. At *Kapokats* they rested to refresh on Fish,
 Rice and Fruits. Here they went by Water about
 a League on a River, and a little Way by the
 Shore, where they saw several Ships aground.
De Gama had for him and his People two *Alma-
 dias*, lying close together, which the Natives call
Entangada. Being landed again, they proceeded
 on the Way: The *Kutwal* brought him to see a
 Temple* of the *Malabars*, which was as large as
 a great Monastery. It was built of Freestone, and
 covered with Tiles. Over the Front Door there
 hung seven Bells; and before it stood a Pillar as
 high as the Mast of a Ship, made of Wire, with
 a Weathercock of the same at Top. Within it
 was full of Images. This made *De Gama* and the
 rest take it for a *Christian* Church. Entering it,
 they were met by certain Men, naked from the
 Girdle upwards; and from thence to the Knees,
 covered with Calico. They wore Pieces of Ca-
 lico also under their Arm pits, with certain
 Threads, which were hung over their Left
 Shoulder, and passed under the Right Arm, just
 as the *Romish* Priests used to wear their Stoles for-
 merly. These Men, with a Sponge dipped in a
 Fountain, sprinkled their Visitants; and then gave
 each of them some Sanders pulverized to strew
 upon their Heads, (as the *Papists* do Ashes) and
 on their Arms. The *Portuguese* did one, but not
 the other, because their Cloaths were on. On
 the Walls of this Temple were many Images f
 painted, some with great Teeth sticking above an

1498. De Gama.
 Visits an
 Indian
 Temple.

Worships one
 of their Ima-
 ges.

and such frightful Faces, that the *Portuguese* be-
 gan to doubt, whether it was a *Christian* Church
 or not. Upon the Top of the Chapel, which
 stood in the middle of the Temple, was a Fort
 or Freestone Tower, with a little Wire Door, and
 Stone Stairs on the Outside. In the Wall of this
 Tower was an Image, on sight whereof, the *Ma-
 labars* called out *Mary*! Whereupon *De Gama* and
 the rest, taking it for an Image of the Virgin,
 fell on their Knees and prayed. Only one *Juan
 de Sala*, who had some Doubt of the Matter, in
 making his Genu flexion, said, *If this be the
 Devil I worship God*; which made *De Gama* smile.
 They could not see the Statue distinctly, the
 Tower being dark within, nor were they per-
 mitted to go near enough to examine it, because
 they were told, none but *Kafirs*^b could have that
 Privilege. As the *Kutwal* and his Attendance
 came before the Chapel, they fell flat on the
 Ground, with their Hands before them, three
 Times, and then prayed standing.

1498. De Gama.

THE Multitude, that followed all the Way, ^{Crowds on the Road.}
 was extraordinary great. But that which gathered
 at their entering the City, was so prodigious, that
De Gama wondered at it; and the Press so great,
 that they were almost stifled, and could scarce
 move forward. This obliged the *Kutwal* to go
 into a House, where his Brother (who was a No-
 bleman) met him, with several Nayres, sent by
 the King to conduct *De Gama* (who went as an
 Ambassador) to Court. They were preceded by
 Trumpets and Sagbuts, and one of the Nayres
 had a small Piece of Ordnance, which he shot
 off from Time to Time. After the *Kutwal's*
 Brother came, though the Concourse was no less
 than before, yet the People all fell behind, with
 as much Respect, as if the *Samorin* had been there
 in Person. There went with them at least 3000
 Men armed, besides those which were on the
 Pendices and at the Doors, without Number.
De Gama was mightily pleased at the Manner of
 his Reception, saying merrily to those that were
 with him, *They little think in Portugal what Honour
 is done us here.*

AN Hour before Sun-set, they arrived at the ^{Arrives at the Palace.}
 King's Palace; which, though built with Earth,
 was very large, and made a handsome Appearance,
 being surrounded with variety of Trees, and ac-
 commodated with delightful Gardens, adorned
 with Fountains. For the *Samorin* never stirs out
 but when he goes into the Country. Before the

* The *Portuguese* call a Temple or Church of the *Indians*, *Pagod*, or *Pagoda*, which is a Corruption of the Word *Pagabadi*, the Name given by the Natives to any Image of their Saints. ^b *Kafir*, is an *Arabic* Word, signifying an Infidel, or Unbeliever. Which Denomination the *Mohammedans* give to all who are out of the Pale of their Church, and especially to those *Christians*, and others, who use Images in their Worship. By *Kafirs*, here seems to be meant those who attend the Temple, and were *Bramens* by their Dress, whence it may be concluded, that this Information came from *Bontaybo*, and not from a *Malabar* Gentle. The Word *Kutwal* also is *Arabic*.

1498. Palace they found several *Kaymals*, and other Noblemen, who came to receive the General: They passed through five great Courts, with Gates each, attended by ten Porters; who were forced to lay about them with their Sticks, to clear the Way. Being come to the Palace Gate, there met him the King's chief *Bramen* and High Priest, a little old Man, who embraced *De Gama*, and conducted them all in. Here the People pressed so violently to get in, (as seeing their King but seldom) that several were squeezed to Death, which had been the Fate of two *Portuguezes*, but for the Porters, who going before, laid on unmercifully to make Room.

The King's
State

The Palace within, was set round with Seats one above another, like a Theatre. The Floor, covered with green Velvet, and the Walls hung round with Silks of several Colours. The King was of a brown Complexion, large Body, and advanced in Years. He had a majestic Aspect, and lay reclined upon an Estrade or Settee, which was covered with white Silk, wrought with Gold, and over Head a rich Canopy. He wore a short Coat of fine Calico, strewed with Branches and Roses of beaten Gold. The Buttons were great Pearls, and the Holes of Gold Thread. About his Middle was a Piece of white Calico, which reached to his Knees. On his Head he had a Sort of Mitre, covered over with Pearls and Precious Stones. In his Ears were Jewels of the same Kind, and his Toes as well as Fingers, were loaded with Diamond Rings. His Arms and Legs were naked, and adorned with Gold Bracelets. Near him stood a Bafon on a high Stand, all of Gold, out of which one of his Attendants served him with * *Vitele*, which he chewed with Salt and Areka; an Apple no bigger than an Hazel Nut. The Use of this Drug is common all over *India*; having the Virtue, as is supposed, to sweeten the Breath, carry the Phlegm off the Stomach, and quench Thirst. There was another Gold Vessel for the King to spit into, and spirt the Composition after he had chewed it. Likewise a Gold Fountain with Water, to wash his Mouth after it. All present, held their Left-hand before their Mouths, that their Breath might not reach the King, before whom, it is reckoned offensive to spit or sneeze.

De Gama's
Reception.

DE GAMA, in approaching the *Samorin*, bowed his Body three Times, with his Hands lit up, according to the Custom of the Country. His Majesty looked on him kindly, but saluted him so slight, that the Motion of his Head could scarce be perceived. He made Signs to him to advance, and caused him to sit down near him. Then the rest entering, and making their Reverence, he commanded them to be seated opposite to him,

1498.
De Gama

and Water to be brought to cool their Hands; it being very hot, although in Winter. After this he ordered Figs and Jakas to be given them, being well pleased to see them eat. On their calling for Water to drink, a Golden Cup with a Spout, was brought them. And being informed, that the *Malabars* reckoned it indecent to touch the Vessel with their Lips when they drank, they, in Compliance with the Custom, held it at some Distance above their Mouths, but not being used to that Method, the Liquor either over-charged their Throats and made them cough, or falling on one Side, wet their Cloaths, which made Diversion for the Court.

THE *Samorin*, by his Interpreter, willed *De Gama* to open his Business to his Officers present, so to be informed of it by them. But the General giving him to understand, that he could not with Honour recede from the Custom in Use among the *Christian* Princes of *Europe*, which was to hear Ambassadors themselves, and that in Presence of only a few of their chief Counsellors, the King said, he liked the Method very well, and ordered *De Gama* and *Fernan Martinez*, (who acted as Interpreter) to be conducted into another Apartment like the first, where the King followed with only his Interpreter, the chief *Bramen*, his Betel Server, and the Comptroller of his Household. Being seated on his Estrade, he asked *De Gama*, what Country he came from, and the Occasion of his Coming? The Answer was, that he was an Ambassador of the King of *Portugal*, the greatest Prince for Power and Riches in all the West; who having heard, that there were *Christian* Kings in the *Indies*, of whom, by Report, the King of *Kalikut* was Chief, he had thought fit to send an Ambassador to settle a Trade and Friendship with him. That his King's Predecessors, for threescore Years past, had attempted to discover *India* by Sea, but none of his Captains had been able to compass that Design till then: That he had two Letters from his Sovereign, which he would deliver next Day, it being then late, and had Orders to tell his Majesty, that the King his Master was his Friend and Brother; and hoped, in Consideration he had sent so far to seek his Friendship, that in Case his Majesty accepted thereof, he would send his Ambassador to *Portugal* to confirm the same; so that for the future they might correspond continually by their Ambassadors.

Has Act
en e in pri-
vate

DE GAMA having delivered what he had to say, the *Samorin* told him, he was welcome: That since the King of *Portugal* would be his Friend and Brother, he would be the like to him, and send an Ambassador to him forthwith. Then he inquired particularly concerning the King's

The King's
Answer.

* Betele, or Betel.

1498. Power; how far *Portugal* was from *Kalekut*; and how long *De Gama* had been on the Voyage. After this, it being late in the Night, and the General choosing to lodge in a House by himself, rather than with either *Moors* or *Christians*, the *Samorin* ordered his Factor, a *Moor*, to go with him, and provide whatever he should have Occasion for. He was accompanied also by the *Kút-wál* and his Attendants as before: But on the Way there fell such a heavy Rain, that they were forced to house a while at the Factor's, who would have lent him a Horse; but being without a Saddle, he chose rather to go on Foot to his Lodging, whither his Men had already carried his Baggage.

incensed, told them, that since he could not have their Consents, he would go himself and speak to the King, and in the mean Time, would immediately return to his Ships. Proposing this Way to inform the King of what had passed. They approved of his going to Court, but said, they had a little Business to do in the City, and desired he would stay till they returned, since the King would not be pleased, that he should go to the Palace without them. *De Gama* promised to wait for them, but they came not all that Day. The Truth was, they were gained by the *Moors*, who had gotten Intelligence from the Coast of *Africa*, of what the *Portuguese* had done there, and that their Coming was to discover *Kalekut*. *Bontaybo* told them, they came not to discover *Kalekut*, but to settle a Trade there, and carry back Spices to their own Country, where there was Store of Gold, and which was frequented by Merchants, who came to *India* by Way of the *Red-Sea*, that therefore their establishing a Trade at this Place, would redound much to the *Samorin's* Interest.

1498.
De Gama

S E C T IV.

The Moors Intrigues against the General. He is confined by the Kút-wál.

De Gama is
displeased.

NEXT Morning, *De Gama* resolving to make the *Samorin* a Present, sent for the Factor and *Kút-wál* to inspect them first. The Present consisted of four Pieces of Scarlet, six Hats, four Branches of Coral, six Almasares, a Parcel of Bras, a Chest of Sugar, two Barrels of Oil, and two of Honey. At Sight of these Things, the Factor and *Kút-wál* laughed, saying, it was not a Present fit for the King, that the poorest Merchant who came to that Port gave a better: In short, that if he would needs make the King a Present, it should be in Gold; for that he would not accept of any Thing else. *De Gama*, being offended with their Behaviour, replied with some Resentment, that if he had come there to trade, he would have brought him Gold, but that he was no Merchant but an Ambassador; that the Present was from himself, not the King his Master, who not knowing that such a Prince as the *Samorin* was in being, had sent no Present for him: But that when he should be certified, that there was such a Monarch as *Kalekut*, he would, no doubt, with the next Ships, send him Gold, Silver, and other Goods of Value. The Factor and *Kút-wál* said, it might be so; but that it was the Custom there for every Stranger, who came to speak with the King, to make a Present suitable to his Dignity. *De Gama* answered, that it was fit the Custom should be observed; and that for the same End, he proposed to make the King that Present, which would have been better, but for the Reason above-mentioned; and therefore desired, that he might be suffered to carry it to the King, otherwise he would send it aboard again.

THIS they allowed; but were the more alarmed at what they heard, since, said they, should these Strangers, who are *Christians*, once get Footing in *Kalekut*, the Price of our Commodities will fall considerably, and our Trade be ruined. Hereupon, they consulted how to ruin the General's Credit with the *Samorin*, so as to induce him to seize his Ships, and destroy all the Men, that they might not carry back any Tidings of *Kalekut*. To bring this about, some of the Principal among them, repaired to the *Samorin*, and cautioned him not to be deceived by his new Guest; assuring him, that he was no Ambassador, but a Pirate, who had committed the greatest Outrages at *Mozambique*, *Mombassa*, *Melinda*, and other Places on the Coast of *Africa*, of which their Factors had sent them Notice. Fearing this would not have the full Effect, they got the *Kút-wál*, who was in great Credit with the King, to second their Attempt, and alledge the Poverty of the Present, as a Proof of *De Gama* being no Ambassador. Mean while they went to the General's Lodging, under Pretence of Friendship, to advise him what to do; and recommended the making a Present above all Things. This they did to move *De Gama* to shew them that which he had prepared, in order to undervalue it. Accordingly being shewed it, they told him, that the Factor and *Kút-wál* had Reason to be displeased with it, and advised him not to send it by any Means, lest the King should take it as done to affront him. *Bontaybo* was of the same Mind, wondering how it happened, that he was no better provided, seeing *Portugal* afforded Plenty of all Things. *De Gama*, mortified at these Speeches,

At the
the Minister
mediates.

Threatens to
complain.

THEY said, he might send it on board as soon as he pleased; for that they would not consent to it's being carried to the King. *De Gama* much
VOL. I. N^o 2.

F

which

1493.
De Gama.The Samorin
prejudiced,For Want
of a Pre-
sentIt pleased
with the
King's Let-
ter.

which he took to proceed from Friendship, al-
luded in Excuse, the same Reason he had given
the *Kutwál*.

It was the Afternoon next Day, before this
Officer and the Factor came near the General,
and when he resented their Treatment, they took
no Notice of it, but talked of other Matters, and
went with him to Court. As the King's Mind
had been much changed by Yesterday's Report,
he kept *De Gama* waiting three Hours before he
sent for him in; and when he was admitted,
(without any of his Men's being suffered to enter)
the King told him with an angry Countenance,
that he had waited for him all the Day before.
De Gama's Excuse was, that he had been fatigued
with his Journey, being unwilling to tell him the
true Cause, lest it should bring the Present into
Question. But the King, who had been talked
to on that Subject, as related before, immediately
started it, asking him, how it could happen, that
if he came as Ambassador from so great and rich
a Prince, as he said his Master was, that he
brought no Present from him; for that he could
not tell what to make of an Embassy of Friend-
ship, without such a necessary Credential.

DE GAMA made the old Apology, adding,
that his Majesty might be sure his Sovereign would
send him a noble Present, in case he lived to carry
back the News of his Discovery. The *Samorin*
then demanded, *Whether his Master sent him to*
discover Stones or Men? If the latter, added he,
why did he send me no Presents by you? But since,
says he, you have brought me none, I hear you have
a Saint Mary in Gold, and desire I may have that.
De Gama, a little confounded at this Demand,
replied, that *The Image, he was told of, was not of*
Gold but Wood gilded, but nevertheless as it had
preserved him at Sea, he desired to be excused from
parting with it. The King made no Answer to
this; but asked for the Letters; one of which
was written in *Portuguese*, the other in *Arabic*.
De Gama, suspicious of the *Moor's* Integrity, de-

1498
De Gama.
fired he might have *Christian* Interpreters for the
Arabic; but none being to be found, he propos-
ed *Bontaybo* for one, which was granted. The
Moors, having first conned the Letter over among
themselves, read it aloud, the Purport whereof
was, that *As soon as it was known to the King of*
Portugal, that the King of Kalekút, one of the
mightiest Princes of all the Indies, was a Christian,
he was desirous to cultivate a Trade and Friendship
with him, for the Conveniency of lading Spices in his
Ports; for which, in Exchange, the Commodities of
Portugal should be sent, or else Gold and Silver, in
case his Majesty chose the same, referring to the
General, his Ambassador, to make a farther Re-
port.

The *Samorin*, whose Interest it was to encour-
age the Resort of Merchants, seemed well pleased
with the Letter, and putting on a more friendly
Countenance, began to inquire about the Com-
modities of *Portugal*, which *De Gama* gave him
an Account of: Acquainting him at the same
Time, that he had brought Samples of them all
to shew his Majesty, if he would only give him
Leave to fetch them from on board, and offered
to leave four or five of his Men behind, till his
Return. The King replied, there was no Ne-
cessity for his Mens Stay, and bid him bring his
Merchandise on Shore, with the Liberty to sell
them to best Advantage. The *Kutwál* had Or-
ders to attend him to his Lodgings^a.

NEXT Day, being the last of *May*, the *Kut-*
wál sent *De Gama* a Horse; but being without
Furniture, he desired instead thereof, an open
Chair, which was sent. In this he was carried
to *Pandarane*, accompanied by several *Nayres*.
The *Moors*, finding the General was going to his
Ships, and apprehending he would not land any
more, went in Haste to the *Kutwál*, who staid
behind in *Kalekút*, and prevailed on him, by a
large Bribe, to pursue *De Gama*, and detain him
Prisoner, that they might have an Opportunity to
kill him; engaging to obtain his Pardon of the

^a *De Faria* represents what passed at this second Interview or Audience, somewhat differently. It was won-
derful, (says the Historian) that the *Samorin* not knowing how to proceed, because there was none to satisfy him
properly of the Truth of the Business, should resolve to rely on the Faith of him, whom his Ministers accused.
For, as if he had known (continues *de Faria*) how odious a Lie, though to their Advantage, was to the *Portuguese*,
he sent for *Vasco de Gama*, declaring to him at large, how he was informed his Embassy was counterfeit; and
that he was some banished or fugitive Person. At the same Time making him great Offers of a kind Reception
in case it was so, and promising to rely on his Information for the Truth of the Whole. The *Portuguese* Com-
mander heard the King with a great deal of Firmness in his Countenance, and declared himself highly sensible
of the Confidence his Majesty reposed in him. Then in a most learned Speech, he made Answer, overthrowing
by strong Arguments all that had been laid to his Charge: And concluded with the same Gravity and Compo-
sedness, which he had preserved throughout his long Harangue. The King, who had kept his Eyes fixed upon
him all the Time, hoping by exterior Signs to discover the Truth of his Assertion, concluded from the Uncon-
cernedness of his Looks, the Elegance of his Words, and Gravity of his Person, that there could be no Deceit
couched under such sincere Appearances; that the *Moors* proceeded maliciously; and that his Ministers were
imposed upon. Thereupon, he very frankly bid *De Gama* return to his Ships, and land his Merchandise, if he
had brought any; adding, that while he was disposing thereof, he would prepare such an Answer for the King
of *Portugal*, as should be to his Satisfaction.

King,

1498.
De Gama.1498.
De Gama.

King, for acting contrary to his Orders. The *Kutwál* undertook the Affair; and having overtaken *De Gama*, who was gotten a great Way before his Men, unable to walk fast for the Heat, asking him, by Signs, why he made such Haste? and if he was running away? *De Gama* answered, he was running away from the Heat. Being got to *Pandarane*, it was Sun-set before his Men came up. As soon as they arrived, he demanded a Boat or Pinnace to go on board. The *Kutwál* would have dissuaded him, by Reason the Ships were at a great Distance, and it being dark, he might miss of them. *De Gama* told him, it looked as if he had a Mind to stop him, and was not kind Usage from one *Christian* to another; threatening to return and complain to the King, if he did not immediately provide him a Vessel. The *Kutwál* pretended, he only advised what he thought best, and said he might have twenty *Almadias* if he had a Mind; sending at the same Time to look for some, but giving private Orders to the Boatmen to keep out of the Way. The General, suspecting some Treachery, sent three Sailors along the Shore to bid *Coello* (if they saw him) keep off with his Boats. The Time being thus delayed, he consented to stay there all Night. But in the Morning, the *Kutwál*, instead of bringing a Boat, required him to order his Ships nearer Shore. Though this Demand put *De Gama* in Fear, yet he answered, that so long as he was on Land, he would give no such Order; since his Brother would thence conclude, he was detained a Prisoner, and so would return to *Portugal* without him.

Confines De
Gama.

The *Kutwál*, and the rest of them, told him, with an imperious Tone, that if he would not do what they demanded, he should not go on board. At this, appearing offended, *De Gama* made Answer, that if they offered to hinder him, he would return to *Kalekút*, and complain to the King. But in case his Majesty thought fit to detain him, he should be very well pleased to stay in the Country. The *Kutwál* replied, he might go and make his Complaint as soon as he would: But at the same Time to prevent it, ordered the Doors of his Lodging to be kept shut, and several *Nayres* to stand Guard within, with their naked Swords. There were others likewise without to oppose the *Portuguese*, in case they should attempt to force their Way: However, Fear restrained him from laying violent Hands on *De Gama*. His Design, in having the Ships brought to the Shore Side, was to give the *Moors* an Opportunity of boarding them, and destroying the Men: But finding *De Gama* would not suffer it, he desired, that their Sails and Rudders might be lanced. At which the General laughed, and said, he would do no such Thing, since the King had given him Leave to go aboard without any Condition: Adding, that

he might do his worst; and that his Majesty should be acquainted with all the Injuries he had received from him. But although both he and his Men put the best Face upon it, they were under great Fear.

At length, pretending to be out of Victuals, the General would have had the *Kutwál* let his Men go to fetch some, but he refused. This doubled their Apprehensions. At the same Time, one of the Sailors returned, and acquainted him, that he had met with *Coello*, who waited for him with his Boats. *De Gama* did all he could to conceal this Piece of News from the *Kutwál*, and sent back the Sailor privately to apprise *Coello* of the Condition he was in, and order him in Haste to the Ships to prevent a Surprise. He was scarce put off, when the *Kutwál* coming to the Knowledge of it, sent several armed *Almadias* in pursuit; but they could not overtake him. After this, the *Kutwál* pressed *De Gama* again to write to his Brother to bring the Ships near the Shore. But the General told him, if he should, his Brother would not obey such Orders; and in case he should be willing, those who were with him, would not consent to it. The *Kutwál* replied, he should never make him believe so much, for that he well knew, whatever he commanded, would be obeyed.

Attempts
destroy the
Ships.

The Day being spent in this Sort of Parley, at Night they were put into a great Yard encompassed with Walls, under a stronger Guard than before. This made them apprehend they should be separated next Day. It was imagined the *Kutwál*'s Design was, to extort a Present. That Night he would needs sup along with the General, for which Purpose, Rice and Hens had been provided, and wondered as much to see they bore their Confinement so patiently, as at the General's Resolution in refusing to comply with his Demand. Next Day, he told *De Gama*, that since he had promised the King to bring his Merchandize to Land, he should command them to be brought; saying, it was the Custom for all Ships, as soon as they arrived at *Kalekút*, to land both their Goods and Men, who were not to return on board till all were sold. However, he said, as soon as the Merchandizes came ashore, he would suffer him to go to his Ships. Although *De Gama* had no Dependence on the *Kutwál*'s Words, yet he told him he would send for them, provided he would furnish *Almadias* or Pinnaces, for that he knew his Brother would not send the Ships Boats, unless he was aboard himself.

His Designs
frustrated.

The *Kutwál* consented to this Proposal, in Hopes to get all the Goods himself, and *De Gama* dispatched two of his Men with a Letter, to let his Brother know the Terms which he and the *Kutwál* were come to. That though he was confined, he was otherwise well used, that he should

Aims to seize
the Goods.

1498.
De Gama.

send Part of the Cargo on Shore; and in case afterwards the *Kutwál* detained him, he should then think he was kept Prisoner by the *Samorin's* Command, in order to gain Time for arming his Ships to seize theirs. And therefore, in such Case, advised him (*Paul de Gama*) to return forthwith to *Portugal*, to inform the King, and counsel him, to send a strong Fleet that might rescue his Subjects out of Slavery, and secure the Trade of a rich Country so luckily discovered.

S E C T. V.

De Gama is set at Liberty. The Samorin's Diffimulation, and Letter to the King of Portugal.

De Gama
ad. p. 4

PAUL DE GAMA sent the Goods immediately; letting the General know, that he would not return without him, and that if they did not release him forthwith, he would force them to it with his Ordnance. The Goods being landed, the *Kutwál*, after making Friends with the Genetal, let him go to his Ships. When he was gotten on board, he resolved neither to go ashore any more, nor send more Goods, till he understood those which had been already landed, were sold. This was a great Vexation to the *Moors*, who saw him now more out of their Reach; yet, to do him what Hurt they could, they began to undervalue his Merchandizes, and hinder the Sale. Mean Time, the General, by his Factor *Diego Diaz*, acquainted the King with his Reasons for so acting, and the Injuries that had been done him by the *Kutwál*, as well as the *Moors*.

Samorin's
Answer.

THE King seemed to be much incensed, and promised to punish the Offenders, and send some Merchants to buy the Goods. This last was performed, though not the first; for the *Kutwál* was not confined. But seven or eight *Guzarat* Merchants came, and with the Factor, an honest *Nayir*, to remain in the Factory, and not suffer a *Moor* to come near it. But as this was only to put the better Gloss on Things, and the *Guzarats* were, underhand, gained by the *Moors*, they bought nothing; and rather lessened the Value of the Commodities. After this, the *Moors* were more inveterate against the *Portuguese* than before; so that whenever any of them landed, (as if it was an Injury done to them) they would spit on the Ground, by Way of Contempt, and cry *Portugal! Portugal!* At which the Men, as they were ordered, would only laugh, to shew how little they regarded their Malice.

Factory at
Kalekut.

DE GAMA finding the Goods did not go off, supposed there were no Merchants in the Place, and therefore sent to desire of the King Liberty for removing them to *Kalekut*, which was granted; and the *Kutwál* ordered to have them carried thither, and provide a House to deposit them, all

1498.
De Gama.

at his Majesty's Expence. But still the General would not land again: To which he was also advised by *Bontaybo*; who, in his frequent Visits, told him, that the King was apt to change his Mind, and might therefore be influenced by the *Moors*, who were in great Credit with him. *De Gama* always rewarded this *Moor* for his Intelligence. But was upon his Guard to him as well as the rest; nor ever let him know what he intended to do. The Goods being removed to *Kalekut*, the General gave his Men Liberty, by Turns, to see the City, where they were kindly received by the *Gentiles*, and sold their Goods with the utmost Freedom. The Natives, on the other hand, daily resorted to the Ships in Boats, to sell Provisions; and many out of mere Curiosity, who were kindly entertained by the General's Order, the better to ingratiate himself with the King.

De Gama
sends to the
King

THUS Matters went quietly on till the tenth of *August*, when the Season for returning from the *Indies* being come, *De Gama*, with the Advice of his Council, sent *Diaz*, his Factor, to the King, with a Present of Scarfs, Silks, Coral, and other Things, and to notify his Intention to depart. Desiring, in case he was disposed to send an Ambassador to *Portugal*, that he might be dispatched. He likewise acquainted him, that he designed to leave his Factor and Secretary at *Kalekut*, with the Goods that were there, to remain till the Arrival of the next Fleet from *Europe*: And lastly, as Confirmation of his having been in *India*, he requested that the King would send his Master a Bahar of Cinnamon, another of Cloves, and a third of Spices, which should be paid for out of the first Goods that were sold.

His Factor
sized.

AFTER waiting four Days, *Diaz* was at length admitted to the Presence of the King; who looking on him with a frowning Countenance, asked what he wanted? *Diaz*, in great Fear, delivered his Message; and then going to offer the Present, the *Samorin* would not see it; but ordered it to be delivered to his Factor. As to the General, his Answer was, that if he would needs go away, he might, but that before he went, he should pay him 600 *Sharafins*, according to the Custom of the Port. *Diaz*, on his Return, seeing himself accompanied with several *Nayirs*, looked upon it as a good Sign: But as soon as he arrived at the Factory, they placed themselves to guard the Door, and would not suffer any to go out. After this, Proclamation was made through the City, forbidding any Person whoever, to go on board the Fleet under Pain of Death. For all this *Bontaybo* went, and bid the General be on his Guard; assuring him, that all the seeming Courtesy of the King was only a Bait to draw him and his Men ashore, in order to destroy them: For that the *Moors* had persuaded him the *Portuguese* were Pirates, and came with no other Intention, than to

1498. *De Gama.* to carry off by Force such Merchandizes as were brought to the City; and to pry into the Strength of the Country, in order to return with a Fleet sufficient to invade it.

*He makes
Reprisals.*

THIS Information was confirmed by two *Malabars*; and in the Night a Negro Servant of *Diaz* arrived in a Fisher-boat to inform *De Gama* of what had happened: But though much incensed at it, he proposed to wait a little to see the Issue. Two Days after there came aboard a single *Almadia*, with four Boys, who bringing precious Stones to sell, the General took for Spies, but seemed to be ignorant of what had passed in *Kalekut*, and would not seize them, thinking to allure others of more Consequence aboard. This had the Effect, for the *Samorin* imagining from hence, that *De Gama* knew nothing of the Imprisonment of his Factor and Secretary, sent People on board to amuse him, till such Time as he could fit out a Fleet, or the Ships of *Mekka* should arrive to take him. At length there coming six principal *Malabars*, and fifteen others, their Attendants, he ordered them to be seized; and sent back two of the Pinnace-Men with a Letter, in the *Malabar* Tongue, to the King's Factor, demanding his Factor and Secretary in Exchange.

*The King
afflicts Igno-
rance.*

THIS Letter being shewed the *Samorin*, he ordered his Factor to take the Prisoners home with him, that he might not seem to have had any Knowledge of their Seizure; and from thence to send them to the General: But not arriving as soon as he expected, *De Gama*, on the 23d, set sail and came to Anchor in an open Road, four Leagues below *Kalekut*, where he waited three Days; and seeing none came near him, put to Sea almost out of Sight of Land. Here a Boat with *Malabars* came aboard, who told the General, that they came to let him know his People were in the King's Palace, and would be with him next Day. *De Gama* told them they must bring him his Men or Letters from them instantly, that if they came again without either he would sink them; and if they came not at all would cut off the Heads of those he had seized. As soon as the Boat was departed, he turned his Ships towards Shore, and came to Anchor over against *Kalekut*.

*The Factor
answered.*

NEXT Day they descryed seven *Almadias*, which made up to the General's Ship, in one of which was *Diaz* and *Braga*, whom the *Malabars* put into the Ship-boat, and then withdrew; not daring to come near, waiting for the General's Answer. Soon as the *Samorin* was informed of the Ships Departure, he sent for *Diaz* from his Factor's House; and, as if he knew nothing of his Imprisonment, asked him what was the General's Reason for detaining his People? *Diaz* having told him, he said the General

was in the right of it. Then he asked if his Factor had extorted any Gift from him; saying, that he well knew he had ordered his Predecessor in that Office to be put to Death for taking Money from the Merchants. Then he bid *Diaz* desire the General to send him the Stone (with a Cross and the Arms of *Portugal* cut on it) which he had promised him, that he might get it set, and let him know, if he was willing to leave him (*Diaz*) to be his Factor in *Kalekut*. By *De Braga* also he sent a Letter to the King of *Portugal*. It was written by *Diaz* on a Palm-tree Leaf, and signed by the *Samorin*, and was in these laconic Terms. *Vasco de Gama, a Gentleman of thy House, came to my Country, of whose Coming I was glad. In my Country there is Plenty of Cinnamon, Cloves, Peppers and precious Stones. The Things which I am desirous to have out of thy Country, are Silver, Gold, Coral and Scarlet.*

1498. *De Gama*

DE GAMA perceiving the *Samorin's* Insincerity, returned no Answer, farther than that he sent back all those that were *Nayes*, but kept the rest till all his Merchandize was restored. He also sent the King the Stone he asked for. Next Day *Bontaybo* came aboard, and told the General that the *Kutwâl*, by the King's Order, had seized all his Effects, saying he was a *Christian*, and had been sent overland by the King of *Portugal* as a Spy. He added, that he knew it was all done by the Procurement of the *Moors*, and that not doubting as they had taken his Goods they would injure his Person, he had fled away to avoid their Malice. *De Gama* was glad of his Coming, and ordered a Cabin for him, telling him, when he came to *Portugal* he should meet with ample Amends for the Loss of his Goods.

*He comes
on board.*

AFTER this there came three *Almadias*, with certain Scarfs layed on the Benches, which they sayed was all the Merchandize; desiring the *Malabars* might be delivered them in Return. But *De Gama* perceiving it was only a Trick, told them he would have none of their Merchandize, but would carry the *Malabars* to *Portugal*, to confirm his Discovery. He added, that he would shortly return to *Kalekut*, and then the King should know whether the *Christians* were Thieves, as the *Moors* had persuaded him, at whose Instigation he had done them much Wrong.

*Some say-
ing detained*

SECT. VI.

De Gama leaves Kalekut, and returns to Portugal.

DE GAMA immediately departed. Two Days after, being becalmed, a League from *Kalekut* there advanced towards them sixty Tons full of Soldiers, sent by the *Samorin* to take the Ships, but by means of the Ordnance, and a Gale which sprung up, the Fleet got clear, the *Malabars*

*De Gama
leaves Ka-
kut.*

1498.
De Gama

bars following them for an Hour and half. It was lucky for the *Portugueze* that they arrived at *Kalekút* in Winter, when the King's Fleet, which was numerous, was hauled up; for had it been Summer, when his Vessels are at Sea, their Ships might have been easily destroyed

1498.
De Gama.Written to the
Samorin.

NOTWITHSTANDING these Injuries received from the *Samorin*, the General having the Good of the next Ships that should be sent to *India*, in view, thought fit to send him a soothing Letter, which was written in *Arabic* by *Bontaybo*, wherein he made an Apology for carrying away the *Malabars*, and not leaving a Factor behind, on Account of the *Moors*. With great Tenders of Service on his own Part. He farther assured him, that the King his Master would be glad of his Friendship, and send him, by the next Fleet, Plenty of the Merchandizes he demanded, concluding, that the Trade which his City would thenceforth have with the *Portugueze*, would redound greatly to his Advantage. This Letter was sent by one of the *Malabari*, and was delivered to the King.

Comes to Santa
Maria.

DE GAMA, continuing his Voyage along the Coast, two or three Days after, entered with his Fleet among certain little Islands, from one of which there came several Pinnaces with Fish and other Victuals. The *Portugueze* treated the People kindly, and having given them Shirts and other Things, with their Leave, set up a Cross, and called the Place *el Padron de Santa Maria*. A Week after, on the 19th of September, he anchored at six little Islands near the Shore, where they got excellent Water; and the People from Land brought Hens, Gourds and Milk, saying the Country abounded with Cinnamon, and some *Portugueze* who were sent to know the Truth, brought Word that they saw a whole Wood of wild Cinnamon.

Attacked by
Pirates.

SOME of the Men, who went to cut Wood, having seen two Boats near Shore, *De Gama* ordered a Sailor to look from the Main-top if there were any more Vessels in Sight. The Man say- ed he descryed eight large Ships advancing forward. When they were within two Leagues, the General made towards them; which the others perceiving, fled to the Shore. *Coello* coming up with one of the Ships, boarded it, and found it laden with *Cocoas* and *Melassius*. He also met with many Bows and Arrows, Swords and Targets. The other seven Ships ran ashore; but the *Portugueze* Vessels not being able to come near them (as being round bottomed) the Men followed them in their Boats, battering them with

their Ordnance. Next Day some of the Natives who came in an *Almadia* told *De Gama* that those Ships were sent by the King of *Kalekút* to take his^a.

FROM hence he went to a little Island, with four others about it called *Anfandiva*^b, or the five Islands, in the *Malabar* Language. It is about two Guns Shot farther, and but a League from Land. Here they found many Woods, and two Conduits of Freestone, with excellent Water. This Island was formerly inhabited by *Gentiles* and adorned with fair Buildings, especially the *Pagod*s: But after the *Moors* from the *Red Sea* began to traf- fic to the *Indies*, they used to call here to take in Water and Wood, and abused the Inhabitants to such a Degree, that they were forced to remove to the Continent, after they had pulled down their Buildings, nothing remaining then of the *Pagod* but the Chapel. However, those on the Coast, which belonged to the King of *Narsinga*, had such Devotion for it, that they resorted thither frequently to worship three black Stones that stood in the Middle of it.

Other Pirates
appear.

HERE the General resolved to careen his Ships. While the first was aground there came towards them two *Bugantines* with Flags out, and their Drums beating and Trumpets sounding. There were five others along the Shore to assist them in Case of Need. The *Malabars* gave the general Notice that they were *Pirates*^c, who, under Colour of Friendship, plundered all they met: Wherefore as soon as they came within Gun Shot, he ordered all his Ordnance to be fired at them; on which they retreated, crying, *Tambarane!* that is, God! God!

THERE came others frequently to view the Ships, out of Curiosity, as they pretended, but the General would not suffer them. Among the rest there was one in a little Paraw, who seemed to be about forty, and not of that Country. For he had on a Sabaco of fine Calico, which reached to his Heels, and on his Head a Sort of Turban, which covered Part of his Face also, and at his Girdle a Simeter. As soon as he landed he ran up to the General, and then to the other Captains, and embraced them as familiarly as if he had been their old Acquaintance; telling them he was a *Christian*, born in *Italy*, and that having been brought very young into *India*, belonged then to a *Moor*, named *Sabay*, who was Lord of an Island called *Goa*, about twelve Leagues distant, wherein there were 20,000 Horse; that although being among *Moors*, he complied with their Worship, yet he was still in

A spy
seized.

^a *De Faria* says this Attack was made by a Pirate called *Timoja*, (of whom frequent Mention will be made hereafter) with eight small Vessels so linked and covered with Boughs of Trees, that they looked like a small floating Island, and surprized *De Gama* at first Sight, not knowing what to make of it.

^b Rather *Anchediva* or *Ange Diva*. ^c This seems to have been *Timoja*'s Squadron, rather than the former.

his

1498. *De Gama.* his Heart a *Christian*; and hearing that there were arrived at *Kalikut* certain strange outlandish Ships, whose Men were cloathed from Head to Foot, and spoke a Language quite unknown in the *Indies*, he presently judged them to be *Franghis*^a, and besought *Sabay's* Leave to go see them, which he not only had granted, but ordered him to tell them that whatever his Country afforded, was at their Service; and that if they were disposed to settle in his Dominions, he would provide for them to their Satisfaction. In Conclusion he desired a Cheefe to send to a Companion of his on Shore, in Token of his being well received.

Confession extorted.

ALTHOUGH this gave the General some Suspicion, yet he ordered him the Cheefe with two Loaves, which he accordingly sent ashore, and continued talking to *De Gama*. As his being so full of Words encreased their Jealousy, the General's Brother asked some of the Natives who he was? They informed him that he was a Pirate, and had been aboard other Ships, which were brought aground there before. Upon this the General ordered him to be carried on board and whipped to make him confess who he was, and the Design of his Coming. The Whipping having had no Effect, he ordered him to be hung by the Genitals, and so hoisted up and let down by a Pulley. After the fourth Torture he confessed that he was a Spy, sent to discover the General's Strength, who he said was hated along that Coast, on account of being a *Christian*, and that there were *Atalayas* or Posts placed in every Bay and Creek to set upon him, as soon as forty great Vessels, which were sitting out, should appear. The General then ordered him to be confined under Hatches, and looked after till he was cured. Telling him he did not design to make a Slave of him, but would carry him to *Portugal*, to give some Account of the Country to his King, who would reward him well for his Pains.

Becomes Convert

AFTER this *De Gama* resolved to leave those Coasts as fast as he could; and the Ships being ready in ten Days, set sail the fifth of *October*: But before his Departure he ordered the Vessel he had taken to be burnt, though he had been offered 1000 Fanons for it; saying, he would sell nothing that belonged to his Enemies. When they were gotten about 200 Leagues from the Island, the *Moor*^b finding there was no Remedy, said he would tell the whole Truth, declaring that he did really belong to *Sabay*; to whom Word being brought, that the General was wandering about those Seas, like one who knew not where he was, Orders were given to fit out a

strong Fleet to take him, that in the mean time the *Sabays* commanded him to repair to the Island to get Intelligence of the General's Strength, and also try if he could persuade him to visit *Goa*, in which Case *Sabay* intended to seize them, hearing they were valiant, in order to assist him in his Wars against the neighbouring Princes. After this he was used kindly, had Cloaths and Money given him, and at length became a *Romanist*, by the Name of *Gasper de Gama*; taking his Name from one of the three Magi Kings [of *Collin*] and his Surname from the General.

1499. *De Gama.*

THE Voyage to *Melinda*, where *De Gama* designed to touch, to take in an Ambassador, proved very dangerous and troublesome; by reason of the continual Storms and contrary Winds or Calms which they met with. The Heat also was intolerable; which Inconveniences, joined to the Tedioufness of the Passage, brought on the Scurvy with swelled Gums and Limbs, as at the *Rio de buenas Smayas*^c. Their Bodies also broke out in Tumours, occasioned by a pestilent foetid Humour, which threw them into a Flux, whereof thirty died. This struck the rest with such a Fear, that they gave themselves up as dead Men; Masters, Pilots and all concluding that Sort of Weather continually reigned in this Part of the Ocean. *De Gama* reasoned with them to no Purpose, they had been four Months at Sea, nor were there sixteen Men fit for Labour in each Ship. So that the other two Captains agreed to return to *India*, in case any Wind offered fit to carry them. They had scarce come to this Resolution, when a fair Gale sprung up, which in sixteen Days brought them near the Land, the Sight whereof made them forget all their pained Miseries.

Miseries at Sea.

THIS happened on *February* the second, in the Evening, 1499. One of the *Moors* was of Opinion they were near *Monzambik*^d, because he said the People of that Country were continually troubled with the same Distemper that afflicted the *Portuguese*. But next Morning they found themselves before the City *Magadoxo*^e, which appeared very large and handsome, surrounded with Walls, and in the middle a great Palace that stood very high. 'Tis 113 Leagues from *Melinda*, and being inhabited by *Moors*, the General ordered the Ordnance to be shot off, by Way of Defiance, as he passed along the Coast. That they might not overshoot *Melinda*, they came to Anchor every Night; and being arrived at a Village of *Moors*, within ten Leagues thereof, there came from thence eight *Turradas*, or Boats of

Arrive at Magadoxo.

^a The Name given by the *Asiatics* to all *Europeans*.
Signs with a Cross from Shore, to get on board.
^e Pronounced *Magadofo* by the *Portuguese*.

^b *De Faria* says he was a *Jew*, who made
Since called the *Cuama*.
^d So 'tis often written.

1499.
De Gama

Island of
Zanzibar.

De Gama
arrives at
Lisbon.

that Country, full of Soldiers, directly towards a the Ships; but the Ordnance thundered so thick among them, that they soon tacked about, and fled. From hence they sailed to *Melinda*. As soon as they arrived, the King sent to visit *De Gama*, with a Present of Provisions, which the General returned.

HAVING staid here five Days to refresh his Men, the seventeenth of *February* he departed, carrying with him the Ambassador, whom the King had before promised to send to *Portugal*. Four Days after, coming to the Shoals of *St. Raphael*, he burnt the Ship of that Name, not having Men enough left to man all the Vessels^a. This took up five Days. The Twentieth, they got to the Island *Zanzibar*, six Degrees South; it lies but ten Leagues from Land, and is very large. Near it are two others, *Pemba* and *Monfa*, all very fertile, full of Orange Groves, and stored with Provisions. The *Moors* who inhabit them are of no great Force, but carry on a good Trade with *Mombassa* for *Guzarat* Calico, with *Sofala* for Gold, and with the island of *St. Lawrence* for Silver. The King (for each is governed by one) sent *De Gama* a Present, with Offers of Friendship.

MARCH the first, they departed, and cast Anchor before the Islands of *St. George*, without concerning themselves about the People of *Mozambik*, and the third came to the Island of *San Blas*, where they victualled with Sea-Wolves, and Solitarios. Sailing from thence with a fair Wind, on the twentieth they doubled the *Cape of good Hope*. After this a fresh Wind continuing for twenty Days, they made a great deal of Way; and at length arriving near *St. Jago*, one of the *Cape Verde* Islands, *Coello*, being forward to carry the King Tydings of the Discovery, slipped away^b one Night, that he might get first to *Portugal*; and on *July* the tenth, put into *Cascais*. The General coming to *St. Jago* left his Ship, which was in very bad Condition, to be fitted up, and hired a Caraval to proceed home. His Brother who had been long troubled with a Pthysic, growing worse, he put in at *Tercera*; where, soon after Landing, *Paul De Gama* died, and was buried. The General departing thence, arrived at *Belem* in *September* 1499, two Years and two Months from his first setting out. Of 108 Men who went with him, only fifty^c returned alive.

^a *De Faria* tells this a different Way; for he says the *St. Raphael* struck on the Sands of that Name, and was lost, but the Men were saved. ^b The same Author says he was separated by a Storm near *Cape Verde*, and arrived at *Lisbon*, thinking *De Gama* had got home before him. ^c *De Faria* says fifty five, and that they were all rewarded by the King.

^d There are in *Grynæus's Latin Collection*, from p. 114. to p. 224 some Letters relating to this Voyage of *Cabral*, who is there called *Petrus Aliares*, and *Ramusio* has given his Voyage written by a *Portuguese* Pilot, Vol. 1. p. 121. ^e It was blessed by the Bishop of *Vyfeu*, who at the same Time put on his Head a Cap, blessed by the Pope, which he presented him as a most valuable Jewel.

THE King, overjoyed at his coming, sent a Nobleman and several Gentlemen to bring him to Court; where being arrived, through Crouds of Spectators, he was received with extraordinary Honour. For this glorious Piece of Service, the Privilege of being called Don was annexed to his Family: To his Arms was added Part of the King's, and at the Foot of the Escutcheon, two Does, which are called *Gamas*. He had a Pension of 3000 Ducats yearly; and was afterwards presented to greater Honours for his Services in the *Indies*, where he will soon appear again. *Nicholas Coello* was made a *Fidalgo*, which is Noble, and had an Appointment of 100 Ducats settled on him. The King also himself augmented his Titles by Virtue of this new Discovery, styling himself, Lord of the Conquest and Navigation of *Æthiopia*, *Arabia*, *Persia*, and the *Indies*.

THERE were public Thanksgivings through the Kingdom, for the good Success of this Voyage, to which succeeded Feasts and Entertainments. Those who had all along represented these Designs as impracticable, now grew ashamed of their Opposition, and became the most zealous to recommend them.

CHAP. V.

The Voyage of *Pedro Alvarez Cabral*, in 1500, being the second of the *Portuguese* to *India*, taken chiefly from *Castanneda*^d.

SECT. I.

Brasil discovered. A stupendous Storm. Touch at *Quiloa* and *Melinda*.

THE Expectation of the *Portuguese* being raised, with the Hopes of Profit upon this great Success, it was resolved to prosecute the Eastern Discoveries. In order whereto, thirteen Vessels, of different Sizes, were fitted out under the Command of *Pedro Alvarez Cabral*, a Gentleman of great Merit, to whom, on the eighth of *March*, 1500, the King delivered the Flag of the Cross^e. The Fleet contained 1200 Men, with whom went eight *Franciscan* Friars, eight Chaplains and a Chaplain Major. Their Instructions were to begin with Preaching, and in case that failed, to proceed to the Decision of the Sword. The Names of the Captains of the Ships

1500.
Cabral
It honoured
and reward-
ed.

Number of
Sails and
Men.

were

1500.
Cabal.

were, *Sancho de Toar*, of *Cabral's* Vessel; *Nicholas Coello*; *Don Luis Coutinho*; *Simon de Myfarranda*; *Simon Layton*; *Bartholomew Dyas*, who discovered the *Cape of Good Hope*; *Diego Dyas*, (his Brother, who had been Purser to *Di Gama* in the former Voyage.) The Captains of the Caravels, were *Pedro de Ataide*, and *Vasco de Silveira*. *Ayres Correa* was Factor of the Fleet, and was to remain as such at *Kalekút*.

Cabral's Instructions.

IN case the King of *Kalekút* readily consented to the settling of a Factory, *Cabral* was secretly to importune him to prohibit the *Moors* from trading thither, or in any other of his Ports; and to promise on that Condition, to import from *Portugal*, the same Sorts of Commodities, better and cheaper than those the *Moors* brought. They were also to touch at *Máinda*, on the Coast of *Africa*, in order to land the Ambassador, (brought from thence by *De Gama*) and send the King a Present.

Bristol first discovered.

THE ninth of *March* the Fleet set sail from *Belem*, the King accompanying *Cabral* to the Water-side. The eighteenth they came in Sight of the *Canaries*, and the twenty-second passed by *St. Jago*. The twenty-eighth *De Atayde's* Ship was separated, and no more heard of for a Time^a. They sailed till the twenty-fourth of *April*, and then discovered Land; which lying so far to the West, they concluded was some Coast, which *De Gama* had not seen in his Voyage. The Men who were sent on Shore, brought Word that it was a fruitful Country, full of Trees, and well inhabited. The People were swarthy, went naked, and used Bows and Arrows. At Night a Storm arising, they ran along the Coast to seek a Port; which having found, they called *Puerto Seguro*, or *The Safe Port*. Here Mass was said on Shore, great Numbers of the Natives assembling to look on, who were very civil and merry. They trucked Parrots for Paper and Cloth. *Cabral* called this Country *Tierra de Santa Cruz*, from the Stone Cross he erected, which after took the Name of *Brazil*. Here he left two banished Men, to inform themselves concerning the Country, and sent a Letter to *Portugal*, to acquaint the King with this new Discovery.

A Comet and stupendous Storm.

MAY the second, they departed for the *Cape of Good Hope*, and the twelfth there appeared a Comet in the East, which for ten Days continually encreased, and was visible both Day and Night. This was the Forerunner of a violent Storm, which rose the twenty-third in the North-East, mixed with Rain; it was succeeded at Night by a Calm. On the twenty-eighth it blustered again, that they were forced to take in

their Sails: But a Water-spout appearing to the North-East, and a Calm ensuing, they not being acquainted with such a Phænomenon took it for a Sign of fair Weather, when on a sudden so furious a Wind sprung up, that not having Time to furl their Sails, four Ships perished with all their Men, among whom was *Bartholomew Dyas*, the Discoverer of the *Cape of Good Hope*. The other seven remained half full of Water, and had sunk, but that their Sails were torn. The Wind veering to the South West the Storm still continued; and in this Manner they were tost about for two Days without Sails, the Day being too dark, that the Ships could not see one another. Every Moment they expected to be swallowed up. But the third Day the Wind abating, the Fleet joined again, and they began to hope all was over, when presently after, the Wind coming about to the East and North-East, began to blow with greater Fury than ever, and the Waves to swell

1500.
Cabal

as high as Mountains. So that one Moment the Ships seemed to be tossed above the Clouds, and the next to be plunged in the bottom of the Deep. This dreadful Tempest continued for twenty Days together; in the Day the Water looked as black as Pitch, and at Night appeared like Flames of Fire.

A length the Winds abating, they found they had passed the *Cape of Good Hope* during the Storm, which however had separated four of the Ships. The sixteenth of *July* they fell in close with the Coast of *Africa* in twenty-seven Degrees South, which appeared to be populous; yet none of the Natives came to look at them, nor would the General suffer his Men to land, having no Hopes of getting Provision there. Running on along the Shore, and being near *Sofala* (with which as yet the Pilot was not acquainted) they saw two Islands, and near one of them two Ships at Anchor, which, on Sight of the *Portuguese*, made towards Shore; but being pursued, were overtaken, and yielded without Resistance. They belonged to *Moors*, and came from the Mine of *Sofala*, laden for *Melinda* with Gold, most of which they threw into the Sea in their Flight. The General treated the Commander courteously, expressed Sorrow for his Loss, and restored all that was taken, as being a Relation of the King of *Melinda*, who was a Friend of the *Portuguese*.

Pass the Cape.

THE *Moor* being willing to recover his Gold again, asked *Cabral* if he had any Witches aboard, who might conjure it up from the Bottom of the Sea. The General answered, that the Christians neither practised nor believed in

De Faria says, one of the Ships was separated near *Cape Verde*, in a Storm, and returned to *Portugal*. *De Faria* says, he was Uncle to that King, and named *Sheikh Foteyma*.

1500.
Cabal.

Witchcraft^a Being informed that he had over-
shot *Sofala*, he proceeded, and the twentieth ar-
rived at *Mozambik*, where he took in Water
and a Pilot to carry him to *Quilua*, an Island
100 Leagues beyond, in about nine Degrees
South, where he was joined to two of the re-
paired Ships. The Dominions of this Prince ex-
tended from *Cape Corientes* almost as far as *Mom-
bassa*, near 400 Leagues of Coast, which is very
populous and full of Towns, besides innumera-
ble Islands along it, that paid Taxes; yet for all
this he was of no great Power, not being able
to raise any considerable Force. The Country
is very fruitful, and stored with small Cattle.
The Water is excellent. *Quilua* is a Place of
great Trade for *Sofala* Gold, for which there is
great Resort of Merchants from *Arabia Felix*, and
other Parts. The Ships here, as in all other Pla-
ces, were built without Nails, and done over with
wild Frankincense, instead of Pitch, there being
none in these Parts.

Refused
Trade there.

BLING arrived at the ancient and noble City
of *Quilua*, (where *Ibrahim*, a Man renowned
among his People, and rich with the Trade of
Sofala, then reigned) the General sent to ac-
quaint the King, that he was come with a Let-
ter from the King of *Portugal*, and Merchan-
dize, in order to settle a Trade with him; desi-
ring an Interview, and that it might be on the
Water; he having had express Orders not to
land. The King consented, and next Day met
him in a Pinnace, accompanied with many At-
endants in Boats, the Streamers flying, and
Trumpets sounding. The King's Letter being
read, the *Sheikh* consented to a Trade, and de-
sired an Account of the Merchandizes might be
sent him next Day, promising to give Gold in
Exchange. But next Day, when the Factor
waited on him, he excused himself from per-
forming his Promise, alledging first, that the
Goods were not for his Purpose, secondly, that
he suspected the General came with a Design to
conquer his Country. The true Reason was,
that finding they were *Christians*, he had no
mind to have any Trade or Correspondence with
them. The General after this Baulk, stayed
three or four Days, to see if the King would
alter his Mind: But perceiving, that instead of
complying with their Demands, he was fortifying
himself for Fear of an Attack, it was resolved to
go on to *Melinda*^b, where they arrived the se-
cond of *August*.

Reception at
Melinda.

HERE they found three *Moorish* Ships of *Guzarat*, but the General would not suffer them to
be attacked, in Friendship to the King of *Me-*

1500.
Cabal.

linda. Being come to an Anchor, he saluted
the City with all his Ordnance. The King
immediately sent to visit him, with a Present of
Provision and Fruits, saying he might command
whatever his Country afforded. *Cabal* return-
ed Thanks by a Messenger, and gave him to un-
derstand, that he came with a Present and Letter
from the King his Master, offering to serve him
with his Fleet, wherever he should command it.
The Present was the rich Furniture of a Horse.
Ayres Correa, chief Factor of the Fleet, being
sent, with others, to carry the Letter and Present,
was met by several Nobles at the Water-side be-
fore the Palace, attended by Women with per-
fuming Pans, and in this Manner he was con-
ducted to the King, who was much pleased with
the Letter, written both in *Portuguese* and *Arabic*,
and kept *Correa* to discourse with him about *Portu-
gal*. Next Day the King had an Interview
with the General on the Water (the latter not
caring to land.) He told him how much he was
infested by the King of *Mombassa*, for admitting
the Friendship of the *Portuguese*, and gave him
two *Guzarat* Pilots for *Kalekût*.

ALTHOUGH the Palace stood near the Shore, *Odd Super-
stition.*
the King would needs ride down to the Water-
side in his new Furniture. On this Occasion,
some of his Courtiers had got a live Sheep at the
Foot of the Steps, before his Palace, and while
the King was coming down, they opened its
Belly and took out the Bowels, over which the
King rode, pronouncing certain Words. A su-
perstitious Custom in this Place. The General
left with the King two banished Men to inform
themselves of the Country; one of these, who
was afterwards called *Machado*, learned the *Ara-
bic*, and went by Land to the Streights of *Mek-
ka*. From thence passing to *Balagat*, by Way
of *Kambaya*, settled with *Sabay*, who was then
Lord of *Goa*, pretending to be a *Moor*; and be-
came afterwards very serviceable to *Alonso de Al-
buquerque*.

S E C T. II.

*Cabal arrives at Kalekût, and settles a Factory
there.*

THE seventh of *August*, *Cabal* left *Melin-
da*, and on the twentieth, arrived at *An-
sadriva*, [*Anchedriva*] where after waiting a few
Days for the Ships of *Mekka*, and finding they
did not come, he proceeded on his Voyage; and
the thirteenth of *September*, cast Anchor within
a League of *Kalekût*. Presently there came a-
board several Pinnaces, with Provisions to sell;

Arrives at
Kalekût.

^a This was a great Fallacy, since no People are still more superstitious that Way, than most Popish Nations; nor are we quite free from the same Infatuation, notwithstanding the Statute in Favour of Witchcraft be repealed.

^b *Melinda* is called by the *Mohammedans* in the *Indies*, *Maland*.

1500.
Cabal

and afterwards several of the principal *Nayres*, a with a Compliment from the *Samorin*, expressing much Satisfaction at his Arrival, and making great Offers of Friendship. Upon this *Cabral* went nearer the City with his Ships; and next Day sent one *Gaspar*^a to demand a safe Conduct for a Messenger, and with him the four *Malabars*, whom *De Gama* had carried away, dressed in the *Portugueze* Habit. The Citizens seeing them return in good Health and Plight, were very well pleased, so was the *Samorin*. But he would not see them, as being but Fishermen. He received *Gaspar* very well, and gave Leave for any one to come ashore who had a mind. The General hereupon sent *Alonso Hurtado* with an Interpreter, to acquaint the King, that he came from *Portugal* purely to settle Trade and Friendship; and desired Hostages, that he might wait on him in Person. The Pledges he desired were the *Kitwál*, and *Arafbamenoka*, one of the principal *Nayres*.

Cabal
lands

THE King not caring to part with the Persons required, on Account of their Age and Infirmities, proposed to send others in their Stead: But afterwards, at the Intigation of the *Moors*, was against sending any at all, upon the Punctilio, that the General's Demand argued Want of Confidence in him. After three Days Debate, the *Samorin* being overcome with the Prospect of the Advantages arising from Trade, complied to send the Hostages^b: Whereupon the General resolved to wait on the King on Shore; ordering *Sancho de Toar*, whom he left to command in his Absence, to use the Hostages well, but not to deliver them to any who came to demand them, although it should be in his Name.

Reception on
Shore.

THE twenty-eighth of *December*, the King sent several of the principal *Nayres*, with many servants and musical Instruments, to attend the General: Who, being informed that the *Samorin* waited for him in a Gallery built on Purpose to receive him, near the Water-side, set out in all the State he could, accompanied with the Boats of the Fleet, and thirty of the principal Persons belonging to it. The Hostages were very loth to enter the Ship, till they saw the General landed, apprehending that as soon as they were aboard he would return and detain them. While this Parley was on foot, *Cabral* landed; on the Shore many *Kaymals*, *Pinakals*, and other principal *Nayres* waited for him. He was immediately taken up in a Chair, and, accompanied with all his Attendants, carried to the *Serame*, which was a Lodge, or Hall, hung with Carpet of *Alkatif*; at the farther

End whereof the King^c sat in an Alcove, like a little Oratory. Over his Head hung the Cloth of State, of Crimfon Velvet, and under and about him, were twenty Silk Cushions.

1500.
C. Cabal.

HE had only a Piece of white Calico, embroidered with Gold about his Middle, all the rest of his Body being naked. On his Head was a Cap of Cloth of Gold. At his Ears hung Jewels, composed of Diamonds, Sapphires, and Pearls; two of which were larger than Walnuts. His Arms, from the Elbow to the Wrist, and his Legs, from the Knees, downward, were loaded with Bracelets, set with infinite Precious Stones of great Value. His Fingers and Toes were covered with Rings. In that on his great Toe was a large Rubie of a surprising Lustre. Among the rest there was a Diamond bigger than a large Bean. But all this was nothing, in Comparison to the Richness of his Girdle, made with Precious Stones set in Gold, which cast a Lustre that dazzled every Body's Eyes. Near the *Samorin* stood a Chair of State and his Litter, all of Gold and Silver, curiously made, and adorned with Precious Stones. There were three Trumpets of Gold, and seventeen of Silver, whose Mouths were set with Stones also: Not to mention the Silver Lamps and Censers smoking with Perfumes, and his Golden spitting Basen. Six Paces from him stood his two Brothers, who were next Heirs to the Crown; and a little farther several Nobles, all standing before him.

The Samorin's Audience.

THE General, on his Entrance, would have gone up to kiss the *Samorin*'s Hand. But being informed it was not the Custom there, he desisted, and took his Seat in a Chair placed near the King, which was the greatest Honour that could be done him. He then delivered his Letter of Credit, written in *Arabic*: Which having been read by the *Samorin*, the General delivered his Message, importing, that the King of *Portugal* was desirous of the *Samorin*'s Friendship, and to settle a Factory at *Kalekut*, which should be supplied with all Sorts of *European* Goods; requesting, that either in Exchange, or for ready Money, his Ships might have Liberty to laden with Spices. The *Samorin* seemed pleased with the Embassy, and told the General, that the King his Master should be welcome to whatever his City afforded. Whilst they were talking, the Present was brought in, which consisted of a wrought Silver Basen gilt, a Fountain of the same, a Silver Cup, with a gilt Cover, two Wedges of Silver, four Cushions, (two of Cloth of Gold, and two of Crimfon Velvet) a Cloth

The General's Audience.

^a Perhaps the Convert *Gaspar*, mentioned before, p. 39 a principal Ministers of the Family of the *Bramens*, whole Names the General brought from *Portugal*, by the Advice of *Moncayde*; or *Bontaybo*, as *Castaneda* calls him.

^b *De Faria* says, the Hostages were six of the

^c In the Account of this Voyage, written by a *Portugueze* Pilot, and inserted in *Ramusio's* Collection, we are told the *Samorin*'s Name was *Gnaffer*. See Vol. 1. p. 125.

1500.

Cabral.

Liberty of
Trade grant-
ed.

of State of the same Velvet, striped, and bound with Gold Lace, a very fine Carpet, and two rich Pieces of Arras.

THE Audience being over, the King told the General, that he might retire, either to his Lodgings or Ships, for that he was obliged to send for the Hostages, who were not used to the Sea, and he was sure would neither eat nor drink, so long as they were aboard. Adding, that if he came next Day to conclude what was begun, they should be sent on board again. But this hopeful Beginning had like to have been spoiled, by an unreasonable Distrust which happened to prevail on both Sides. The General being come to the Water-side, a Servant belonging to one of the Hostages, by Order of the Clerk and Controller of the King's Household, went before, in a Pinnace, to give them Notice, that the General was coming on board. As soon as the Hostages heard this, they all leaped into the Water, in order to get off in the Pinnace. But *Ayres Correa* jumping immediately into his Boat, took some of them; but the rest got off, among whom was the *Kút-wút*. The General being come on board, ordered the Hostages that were taken to be put under the Hatches, that they might not run away; and sent to the King to complain of the rest: Laying the Blame on the Clerk and Controller; and promising to deliver those he detained, as soon as his Baggage, and the Men he had left to take Care of it, were brought on board.

Unreasonable
Distrust.

NEXT Day the *Samorin*, accompanied with 12,000 Men, came to the Water-side, and sent on board the General's Men and Baggage: Along with whom went thirty Pinnaces, to fetch back the Hostages; but none of them, through Fear of being detained, durst venture near enough to receive them. The *Portuguese* seemed also as backward to venture to deliver them; so that they remained still in Custody. However, next Morning the General resolved to send them ashore in his own Boats, ordering the Men to land them at a Distance from the Pinnaces. While they were preparing to put off with them, *Araçaminoka*, the oldest of the Pledges, and another, on a sudden, leaped into the Water; the former was taken again; but the other, with five more of them, escaped. *Cabral*, surprised at their Insincerity, [he should have blamed his own Distrust, and theirs] ordered *Araçhem noka* to be closely watched: But no Messenger coming to demand of him, for three Days, and the General observing that he eat nothing all the while, in Pity sent him, with several Weapons belonging to the *Mala-*

bars, to the King; who thereupon ordered two *Portuguese*, still on Shore, to be returned.

1501.

Cabral

A Factory
settled

THREE Days more being elapsed, without hearing from the *Samorin*, the General resolved to send to know if he was inclined to finish the Agreement already begun; in which Case he proposed to send his chief Factor ashore, provided Hostages were delivered, as before. Every one was so possessed with Fear, that *Francisco Correa* was the only Man aboard the Fleet, who would undertake to deliver this Message. The King received *Correa* kindly; said he was well pleased to have the Trade settled; and made no Difficulty to send Hostages. Naming for that Purpose two Nephews of a rich *Guzarat* Merchant, who were immediately sent aboard; and a handsome House provided for the Factor, *Ayres Correa*, to lodge his Merchandize. And whereas the Factor was not yet well known in the Country, or acquainted with the Rules observed in Trade, and Prices of Commodities, the King ordered the Grandfather of the Hostages (to whom the House belonged) to instruct him therein: But the *Guzarat* neglected his Orders, being a Friend to the *Moors*; who, by this Means, had the Goods at their own Price; the *Gentiles* for Fear of them seldom going to the Factory. On the other hand *Correa*, for want of knowing the Rates of *Indian* Merchandizes, always bid more than they were worth, and so bought them too dear. The *Moors* likewise ordered it so, that whenever he went to speak to the *Samorin*, some of them might be present to thwart his Measures. They also prevailed on [*Khojab*] *Samside*^a, Admiral of *Kalekut*, to hinder those belonging to the Factory to go on board, and to detain any of the Ships which should remove near the Shore.

CABRAL being informed of this, and fearing to be set upon by the King's Fleet, in case he remained in the Harbour, weighed Anchor, and stood out to Sea, resolving there to consult what was best to be done. The *Samorin* hereupon sent for *Correa*, and learning from him the Cause thereof, desired him to send to the General to return, and forthwith gave Orders to prevent the Designs of the *Moors*. He also removed the *Guzarat* from about *Correa*, and put in his Place another, named *Gosbequin*^b, who, though a *Moor*, was an honest Man, and a Friend to the *Portuguese*. For the *Moors*, who are Natives of *India*, are always at Strife with those who come from *Kayra*, and the Streights of *Mekka*, and *Gosbequin* was Head of the former, as *Samside*

The Mo-
hammadans
abo. red.

^a D. *Faria*, and others, call him *Cye Cemirazi*. Most of the foreign Names are so corrupted, it is difficult to rectify them. ^b D. *Faria* names him *Coje Bequ*, rather *Khojab Beki* or *Begbi*.

1500.
Calicut.

was of the latter. Farther than this, the *Samorin*, a *de Atayda* with his Caravel, (wherein were sixty Men, besides some *Moors* sent by the Admiral) who gave her Chace; but being a Ship of 600 Ton, and 300 Men, she made no Account of the Caravel, which was small, till some of their Balls reaching her she bore down upon them, pouring in her Shot. But being fiercely attacked by the *Portuguese*, and receiving a Ball between Wind and Water, she quickly made off, and was pursued into the Bay of *Kananor*, where she was taken. There were aboard seven Elephants, worth in *Kalekut*, 30,000 Pounds, one of which was killed and eaten by their Men. The King, next Day, came to the Water side, and was strangely surprized, to see such a Vessel taken by one that was not above a sixth Part of her Bulk, praising the Action, and treating the Men. But the General having discovered the Fraud, in order to gain the Friendship of the King of *Kochin*, restored the Ship to the Owners, making Satisfaction for the Damages. Here it was, that *Duarte Pacheco Pereyra* gave the first Marks of that heroic Valour, for which he was afterwards renowned.

1500.
Cabral.

S E C T. III.

The Artifices of the Moors and Inconstancy of the Samorin. The new Factory destroyed.

Their artful
Contrivance

HOWEVER, the Merchants of *Mekka* obstructed their getting Lading for their Ships; and though Complaint was made to the King, they received no Redress. This was occasioned by the Enmity of the two *Moorish* Officers before-mentioned. The Admiral being offended that the Factor *Correa*, had made greater Application to the other than to him, contrived to be revenged, by getting the General to set upon a great Ship of *Ceylon*, bound from *Kochin* to *Kambaya* with Elephants. To effect this, he told *Correa*, that the Owners of the Ship had refused the *Samorin* one of those Creatures; and that therefore, if the *Portuguese* would take the Vessel, they would not only oblige the King, and forward their own Business, but also possess themselves of a great Quantity of Spice, which belonged to the Merchants of *Mekka*. His Design was, that the *Portuguese* should receive Damage in the Attempt, that Ship being of great Bulk; and to this Purpose gave Notice to the Owners, that they might be the better provided. He concluded at least, in case his Stratagem did not succeed, that the *Portuguese* would disoblige the Merchants of *Kochin*.

Ship of Kochin taken.

THE General sent Word, that to oblige the King, he would willingly undertake the Business, though he was sensible it was a dangerous Attempt; but expected, as it could not be done without Loss of Men, that he should not be offended if his Sailors killed those who were in the *Kambaya* Ship. This having been allowed as reasonable, the General sent after the Ship *Pedro*

Mohammedian complaint.

THE taking of this Ship terrified more than ever the *Moors* of *Kalekut*, who imagined the King set the *Portuguese* on, in Revenge of their Injuries, and finding the latter were able to bring a great Trade to his Port, was careless, whether they continued in his Dominions or not. Upon this, they joined in a Body, and waited on the *Samorin*, representing how much concerned they were to find, that those new Comers should be so highly prized by him, while those who had so long supported the Trade of *Kalekut*, and given Proofs of their Fidelity, should be held of no Account. They insinuated, that the *Portuguese* were Pirates, and could not possibly come to *India* for the sake of Trade; since the Profits arising from thence, could not (as they alledged) go near to defray the Expences of a Voyage of 5000 Leagues, with so many Ships and Men. Nay, they affirmed, that their Design was to plunder the Country, and take the City, if they could once get the least Footing in it; that they would turn the House, which the King had given them for a Factory, into a Fort, and from thence make War upon him in a little Time: They concluded, by threatening to remove to some other City of *Malabar*, in case he continued to give the *Portuguese* so much Countenance, and them so little.

THE King having heard this Complaint, assured them of his Friendship; and that he would not forsake them in Favour of any Strangers.

Return unsatisfied.

* *De Faria* says, this House was granted not without great Difficulty, and that *Correa* took Possession of it with sixty Men. The Substance of this Paragraph is taken chiefly from *de Faria*. *Castaneda* says, the Ship was given to the *Samorin*.

1:00.
Cabral.

He told them the Reason for sending the General to take the *Kochin* Ships was, to try the Valour of the *Portuguese*; and that he permitted them to trade as he did other Merchants, in order to bring their Money into his Country. For all this the *Moors* were not satisfied, because the King did not command the *Portuguese* to quit *Kalekut*, and prohibit their Trading in his Port. After this, they openly intermeddled in their Affairs, and gave them what Opposition they could, in the buying of Spices. Their Design was to pick a Quarrel with those New-comers; that they might at length come to Blows: In which, they concluded, they should be able to destroy them by their Numbers; in the mean Time, incensing the common People all they could, against them.

Trade.

By Means of these subtle Dealings of the *Moors*, in three Months Time, there were but two Ships laden with Spices, and at dear Rates; although the *Samorin* had promised, that all the Fleet should be laden in twenty Days; and that they should be laden before all other Strangers. It was also discovered, that the *Moors* bought up Spices privately, at a lower Price than the *Portuguese* could get them for, and shipped them off, contrary to an Order of the King in Favour of the latter. The General, being troubled at these Things, judged they could not happen without the Privy and Consent of the *Samorin*: For which Reason, he sent to expostulate with that Prince, and let him know how little had been performed of all that had been promised him; intreating, that as the Time for returning to *Portugal* was now come, that he would cause him to be dispatched without more Delay.

The *Samorin* seemed to be surprised and concerned, that the Ships were still unladen. He said he could not believe that the *Moors* would offer to disobey his Commands by a clandestine buying of Spices, and lading their Vessels: But declared, if they had deceived him, that he would punish them for it; and gave the *Portuguese* Leave to search their Ships, and take all the Spices they found in them, only paying the Price which the *Moors* gave for them.

Artifice to incense the People.

As the *Moors* waited for an Occasion to quarrel with the *Portuguese*, they thought this a very fit one. Immediately one of the Principal among them, began to lade his Ship openly; and the better to succeed in his Scheme, got some *Moors* and *Gentiles*, whom the Factor took for his Friends, to persuade him, that if he did not send to seize the same, he would never be able to freight the Fleet. *Correa*, giving Credit to what they told him, sent to desire the General to take that Ship: But he, apprehensive that it would cause the *Moors* to rise against the Factory, argued against it. *Correa* pressed again, and *Cabral* declined it a second Time: But the Factor, persist-

ing in his Application, and engaging to answer for all Damages that should happen on that Occasion, the General at length, much against his Will, on the sixteenth of *December*, sent Word to those on board the *Moorish* Ship, that they must instantly depart, by Virtue of the Authority he had from the *Samorin*. The *Moors* making light of the General's Commands, he next Day sent all his Boats to bring the Ship into the Harbour.

1500
Cabral.

This being known to the *Moors* on Shore, they immediately rose in a tumultuous Manner, and after incensing the Rabble, repaired to the Palace, where, the better to gain the King over to their Side, they alledged, that the *Portuguese* had gotten a much greater Quantity of Spices and Drugs than they had; yet, that not content with the larger Share, they like Thieves and Pirates, would needs run away with all, intreating, that they might have Liberty to take Satisfaction for the Injury. The inconstant King grants them their Request; and the revengeful *Moors* hasten back to assault the Factory. It was encompassed with a Wall ten Feet high, and in it were seventy Men, including the Friars; but among them all, there were only eight Cross-bows, besides their Swords.

The *Samorin's* Inconstancy.

The first Party of *Moors* that advanced, were so few, that the *Portuguese* took them for a Parcel of Mob, and resolved to defend the Gates of the Factory with their Cloaks and Rapiers: But their Numbers increased so fast, and they galled the Defendants so much with their Arrows and Spears, that after losing five Men, they shut the Gates with no small Difficulty, and betook themselves to the Walls with their Cross-bows: But *Correa* perceiving the Enemy to amount in a little Time to 4000, with several *Nayres* amongst them, and that it was impossible to hold out long against such a Force, without Aid from the Ships, set up a Flag on the Top of the Factory, to give Notice of their Distress. The General, being sick a-bed, and unable to assist them in Person, sent *Sancho de Toar* with all the Boats, and what Men they had: But finding the Enemy so numerous, he would not venture to land, nor even go too near the Shore, for Fear they should send out their *Almadias* and *Tonys* to take him. Many of the Besieged being wounded with the Spears and Arrows, which showered on them as thick as Hail; and seeing the *Moors* preparing huge Engines to batter down the Wall, they resolved to quit the Factory by a Door that opened to the Water Side, hoping to save themselves by the Boats: But the Enemy pressing them close, and the Boats not advancing, only twenty escaped, though not unwounded; all the rest being either taken or killed. Among the latter was, *Ayres Correa*; but his Son *Antonio* (who afterwards acquired great Reputation

The Factory destroyed.

The King of Kochin riding on an Elephant, attended by his Nayro's



Small Indian Vessels used on the Coast of Malabar



1500. Reputation by his Actions in *India*) got off, being a
Cabral. then only eleven Years of Age The Merchandize that was seized on this Occasion, amounted to 4000 Ducats, and of the Men that were taken Prisoners, four died of their Wounds.

built after the Manner of *Kalekut*, and inhabited with *Gentiles* and *Moors*, who came from sundry Parts to trade: There were two, each of whom had fifty Ships Provisions are not plenty: But here is Pepper enough, most of that which is at *Kalekut* being brought from hence Yet the greater Resort of Merchants being at this latter Place, makes it the richer of the two. The Country being of no great Extent, and the King not entitled to coin Money, he is therefore but poor.

1500.
Cabral.

S E C T. IV.

Cabral takes Revenge. Sails to Kochin; settles a Trade there and at Kananor. Returns home.

Cabral de-
scribes ten
ships.

THE General was greatly concerned at this Disaster; and finding that the *Samorin* sent no Apology for what had happened, it was resolved to take Revenge immediately, that he might not have Time to prevent it, by arming his Fleet. Hereupon, *Cabral* gave Orders to attack ten large Ships that were in the Harbour. After some Resistance, they were taken. Six hundred of the Men were killed or drowned. Those who remained alive were kept to serve as Sailors. In the Ships were found some Spices, and other Merchandizes, with three Elephants, which were killed and salted for Provision. The Goods being taken out, the Vessels were burnt in Sight of Crouds of *Moors* on the Shore, and in the *Almadias*, which came out to succour their Friends, but were soon repulsed with Loss.

Barros Ka-
lekut.

THE General not thinking this sufficient, ordered his Ships in the Night to spread, and advance as near the Shore as possible, with their Boats before them. At Break of Day, the Ordinance began to play upon the Town, which did great Damage both among the Houses and Inhabitants; who, crowding to avoid, or repel the Danger, fell thick every Shot. Several of the Temples were demolished, with Part of the King's Palace; and the Terror was so great among the Citizens, that the *Samorin* himself fled, who narrowly escaped a Bullet, (from the Boats) a *Nayre* being killed just behind him. Towards Evening they gave over the Cannonade, to follow two large Ships, which (on Sight of what was doing, as they were making into the Port) fled to *Panderané*, where there were five more at Anchor. But not being able to get near them, the General pursued his Voyage for *Kochin*, where it was resolved to settle a Factory, and took two *Moorish* Ships in his Passage, which he burnt, after taking out their Cargoes of Rice. He arrived before that City the twentieth of December.

Sail to Ko-
chin.

KOCHIN is the Capital of a Kingdom of the same Name, nineteen Leagues South of *Kalekut*. It stands upon a River, is very strong, and has a safe and capacious Port. The Land about it is low, and divided into many Islands. It is

b Besides, he is subject to the *Samorin*, who on his Accession to the Throne, goes to *Kochin*, and disposes of the Crown as he thinks fit. He is also obliged to assist the King of *Kalekut* in all his Wars, and must be of the same Religion.

THE General having cast Anchor, sent a Gen- tile Convert, called *Michael Joghi*, to the King, to inform him of his Coming, of what he had done at *Kalekut*, and of his Desire to trade at his Port, with either Merchandize or ready Money. The King (whose Name was *Trimumpara*) left it to his own Choice, and let him know, that he might send whom he would to Land for that Purpose. Dispatching, at the same Time, two of his principal *Nayres* as Hostages, on Condition, that he should change them every Day; because, if they once eat on Ship-board, they never appeared in his Presence any more. The General, pleased with this hopeful Beginning, appointed *Gonzalo Gil Barbosa* for Factor; and sent with him a Clerk, an Interpreter, and four banished Men, as Servants.

A Factory
settled there.

THE King sent the Register of the City, and several Nobles, to receive the Factor, and bring him to Court. Here they found nothing of that State which they met with at *Kalekut*. The Prince was but meanly clad, and his Court had nothing but bare Walls, with certain Seats round them, raised or boxed in, like a Theatre, in one of which *Trimumpara* sat. The Factor being introduced, offered the Present from the General, which consisted of a Silver Basin, for washing Hands, full of Saffron; a large Silver Ewer, filled with Rose-water, with some Branches of Coral. The King received them with Pleasure, returning the General Thanks. And after he had talked a while with the Factor, ordered them to be well lodged. The General would not venture more Men on Shore, for Fear of such an Accident as happened at *Kalekut*. But the Event shewed there was no Reason for Distrust: For by the kind Usage the *Portuguese* met with; by the Dispatch that was made in lading their Ships; and the Willingness with which the Natives assisted them on all Occasions, it plainly appeared, that *Trimumpara* was a Prince of an honest Dispo-

* *De Faria* says, he was a *Bramen*, or religious *Malabar*; one of those who wander naked, girt with Chains, and daubed with Filth; who, if *Gentiles*, are called *Jogues*, and if *Moors*, *Calanders*. *Trimumpara* is the Name given him by *de Faria*, *De Barros*, and others, call him *Trimumpara*.

1500.
Cabral.1500
Christians

sition; and that their differing with the *Samorin*,^a was the best Fortune that could have attended them^b.

THE Ships being laden, and the General on Shore, there came two *Indian Christians* (from *Krangalor*, or *Kranganor*, a City near *Kochin*) who were Brothers (one of them named *Joseph*^c) and desirous to go to *Portugal*, with a Design to visit *Rome* and *Jerusalem*. *Cabral* asked them, if the Place they came from was inhabited solely by *Christians*, and, whether they belonged to the *Greek* or *Latin* Church? One of them answered, that the Inhabitants were a Mixture of *Gentiles*, *Christians*, *Jews*, and Strangers, who were Merchants of *Syria*, *Egypt*, *Persia*, and *Arabia*; that the *Christians* paid the King Tribute, and dwelt in a Part of the City by themselves; that they had a Church in which they had Crosses, but no Images or Bells, (but the Priests, in calling the People to Prayers, observed the Order of the *Greeks*). That they had their Popes, under whom were twelve Cardinals, and two Patriarchs, with many Bishops and Archbishops, who all resided in *Armenia*. That thither went the Bishops of *Krangalor* to receive their Dignity, and that he himself had been there to be ordained Priest by the Pope; that the same Method was observed by all the Clergy within his Jurisdiction, which extended over *India* and *Katay*; that the two Patriarchs resided in those two Provinces, and the Bishops were dispersed in the Cities belonging to them; that their Pope is called *Catholicos*, and their Tonsure is made in Form of a Cross. They were both admitted on board.

Invitation
from other
Kings.

AFTER this, there came two Messengers from the Kings of *Kananor* and *Koulon*, inviting him to their Harbours, and promising him Spices cheaper than he could have them at *Kochin*. The General returned them Thanks, and excused himself from going, in Regard he had already laden; but promised to visit them on his Return to *India*.^e He had scarce taken in his Cargo, when twenty-five great Ships, besides smaller Vessels, appeared on the Coast. The King of *Kochin* being informed of their Design, immediately sent the General Word, that they came on Purpose to seek him out, and had 15,000 Soldiers on board, offering, at the same Time, to assist him with what he wanted.

^a *De Barros* says, *Trimumpara* was offended with the *Samorin*, on several Accounts; and among the rest, for monopolizing the Trade of that Coast.

^b This *Joseph* lived to get to *Portugal*, (his Brother dying by the Way) and is the *Josephus Indus*, under whose Name there is a Voyage given by *Grynæus*, containing 12 Pages. But properly it is no more than an Account of *Kranganor*, and its Inhabitants, (particularly the *Christians*, and their religious Rites) with some Description of *Kalkūt*, *Kambaya*, *Guzarat*, *Ormuz*, and *Nasirga*, but very short, and not very satisfactory. Nor is this any Wonder, since *Grynæus*, or whoever took the Relation from *Josephus's* Mouth, tells us, he could scarce understand him; and that this *Indian*, being a *Christian*, seldom conversed with his *Pagan* Countrymen. It is a common Vice of Travellers, out of a religious Aversion, to shun the Company of those who are best able to inform them concerning the State of their Country. Which is the Reason, that, among the great Number of Relations of foreign Parts to be met with, so few of them give either a full or exact Account of Things.

Cabral returned Thanks; but said, he should be able, with the few he had, to make them repent their Errand. The General, observing that they hovered about, and did not venture within a League of his Fleet, weighed Anchor, and went out against them: But a Storm arising, and the Wind shifting contrary, he was obliged to return.

1501.
Cabral.

NEXT Day, the tenth of *January*, 1501, the Wind proving very fair, the General prepared to move towards the Enemy; but missing *Sancho de Toar's* Ship, which was the biggest next to his own, and best provided with Men, he thought fit to change his Resolution, and make the best of his Way home. He was followed all Day by the *Kalkūt's* Fleet, which at Night left him. This Accident prevented him from returning to *Kochin*, as he had proposed, to set on Shore the *Nayres* Hostages; who, after five Days fasting, were reconciled to eating on board, by the General's good Words. On the fifteenth, they anchored before *Kananor*, thirty-one Leagues to the North of *Kochin*.

Escapes the
Kalkūt
Fleet.

THIS City is very large. The Houses are of Earth, and covered with Slates. There is a fine Bay before it. The Country produces Plenty of Ginger, Cardamoms, Tamarinds, Mirabolans, Cassia, and the like, but no more Pepper than is consumed in the Country. The *Moors* drive here a great Trade. The Pools, near this City, breed Aliigators. Here are Adders likewise so poisonous, that they kill Men with their Breath; and Bats as large as Kites, the Head being like that of a Fox. They are very good to eat. Provisions are plenty. The King is a *Bramen*, and one of the three independent Princes of *Malabar*, but not so rich as either him of *Kalkūt*, or *Koulon*. Here the General took in 400 Quintals of Cinnamon. And it being judged, that the Reason why he did not buy more, was for Want of Money, the King sent to tell him, he might have what he would in Trust.

Comes to Ka
nanor.

THIS generous Offer *Cabral* declined with Thanks; and took on board an Ambassador, sent by the King to cultivate Friendship with the Court of *Portugal*. Afterward he departed, making his Way across the Gulf, lying between *India* and *Africa*: About the Middle of which, on the

Leaves
India

1501. thirty-first of *January*, he took a great Merchant Ship: But finding it belonged to the King of *Kambaya*, let it go again, sending Word, that the Design of his coming to *India*, was not to make War with any of the Princes belonging to it, though he had been forced to it by the *Samorin's* Breach of Peace. He took nothing out of the Ship but a Pilot to conduct him through the Gulf. Being arrived near the *African* Coast, the twelfth of *February* a Storm suddenly arose, by which in the Night, the Ship of *Sancho de Toar*, was driven on Shore, and taking Fire, was burnt, but all the Men saved. Following their Course, in the Tempest, they passed by *Melinda*, not being able to put in there, nor at any other Place upon the Coast, till they they came to *Mozambik*, where they cast Anchor, in order to refit their Ships, and take in Water.

Doubles the
Cape

MEAN while, *Cabral* sent *de Toar* to discover *Sofala*: and the Fleet being in Readiness, sometime after, he proceeded on his Voyage. Near the *Cape of Good Hope*, they were taken with several violent Storms, in which one of the Ships was separated. At last, they doubled it the twenty-second of *May*, and had favourable Weather till they came to *Cape Verde*, where they met with *Diego Diaz*; who, having been separated from the Fleet in it's Way to the *Indies*, was driven into the *Red-Sea*, where he lost his Boat, and most of his Men, by Sickness, and Want of Provisions. His Pilot not daring to venture to carry him to *India*, he returned towards *Portugal*, with only seven Men on board, who, after quitting the *Arabic* Gulf, grew strong and able to manage the Tackle^a.

Arrives at
Lisbon.

THE General finding there came no more Ships, departed for *Lisbon*, where he arrived the thirty first of *July*, 1501. He was followed in a few Days, by the Ship which separated from him at the *Cape of Good Hope*, and after that, came in *de Toar*: Who brought Account, that *Sofala* was a small Island, close to the Continent, inhabited by *Kafirs*; that the *Moors* from *India* trade there for Gold, whereof there are Mines up the Country; and get it in Exchange for Goods of small Value. He brought with him a *Moor*, (given in Hostage for another Man) who gave a considerable Account of the Country. Of the twelve Ships that went out of *Portugal*, only six returned, the other six being never heard of more.

CHAP. VI.

The Voyage of Juan de Nueva; being the third made by the Portuguese to the East Indies. Taken chiefly from Castaneda.

Design of
his Voyage

IN *March*, before *Cabral* returned, the King of *Portugal* sent another Fleet to *India*. But as he imagined, the Contention began in the first

^a *De Faria* says, the greatest Danger he ran, was in the Port of *Mogadushu*, near *Cape Guardafu*

Voyage at *Kalekut*, was at an End; and that a Trade had been settled there by *Cabral*, as well as at *Quiloa* and *Sofala*, he thought fit to send no more than three Ships and a Caravel, with only 400 Men in them, whereof two carried Merchandize to *Sofala*, and two to *Kalekut*. Of this Fleet he appointed *Juan de Nueva*, General, a Native of *Gahua*, and an experienced Seaman. His Instructions were to touch at *San Blas*, and in case he missed any of his Ships, to wait there for them ten Days. After which he was to proceed to *Sofala*, and if a Factory was not already settled, he was to settle one, if possible. Then he was to call at *Quiloa*, and thence put over to *Kalekut*, where, if he found *Cabral*, he should acknowledge him as General, and get him to establish a Factory at *Sofala* in his Return, in case his own Attempt should prove in vain. *De Nueva* (having discovered the Island of *Conceptin* in eight Degrees South Latitude) got safe to *San Blas*, (beyond the *Cape of Good Hope*) where in an old Shoe was found a Letter written by *Pedro de Atayde*, before mentioned, which gave an Account how Matters stood at *Kalekut*, *Kochin*, and *Kananor*. Concluding upon this, that it was not proper to leave the Caravel at *Sofala*, having but few Men, they passed on, and in *August* arrived at *Mozambik*, then at *Quiloa*, having found an Island, which from the Commander was called *Juan de Nova*. At *Melinda*, the King informed them of what had passed in *India*, as the banished Man had done at *Quiloa*. Most of the former, they chased two great Ships, took and burnt one of them. From thence, they crossed the Gulf to *Ambedrua*, where they arrived in *November*; and while they stayed to take in Water, seven large Ships of *Kambaya*, passed by, in their Way to the Straights of *Mekka*. But not caring to engage, did not stop. The Fleet, being come to *Kananor*, the General had a Conference with the King, who pressed him to lade his Ships there. But *de Nueva*, desirous first to talk to the Factor at *Kochin*, declined that Offer. On his Way thither, he took a Ship belonging to the *Moors* of *Kalekut*, after a vigorous Defence, and caused it to be burnt.

1501.
De Nueva

Arrives at
Lisbon

Goes on to
Kochin

BEING arrived at *Kochin*, the Factory, with the rest of the Company, came on board, and acquainted him, that the King was greatly offended with *Cabral*, for leaving the Port without seeing him, and carrying away the Hostages; that notwithstanding they were all kindly entertained; that at Night they were lodged in the Palace, and if in the Day any of them went abroad, they had *Nayres* to attend them; that this Care was taken by the King, to defend them from the *Moors*, who had one Night set Fire to their House. He also apprised the General, that they had pre-ju-

1501.
D. NovaPedro Alvarez
Cabral

diced the Merchants of the Country so much against the *Portuguese* Commodities, that they would not take them in Exchange for the *Indian*; telling him withal, that if he had not brought Money, they would not part with their Spices.

THIS having been the General's Case, he returned immediately to *Kananor*.^a But Money being required there as well as at *Kochin*, and it coming to the King's Ear, that he had brought none, that Prince, rather than he should return with empty Ships, was so generous as to become his Security for 1000 Quintals^b of Pepper, fifty of Ginger, and 450 of Cinnamon, besides some Linen Cloth, till such Time as the Factor he left at *Kananor*, (with two Clerks) should sell the Merchandize put in his Custody. After the Lading was taken in, on the fifteenth of *December*, the King sent him Word, that above eighty *Paraws* appeared to the Northward, sent by the *Samorin* to attack him; advising him to land with his Men and Ordnance. The General sent to thank the King, but let him know withal, that he did not fear to meet his Enemy by Sea, for all the Disparity.

Defeats the
Kochin
Fleet.

NEXT Morning, by Day-break, above 100 Ships and *Paraws*, full of *Moor*s, entered the Bay. As soon as the General perceived them, he removed into the Middle of the Bay, and ordered his Ships to pour in their Shot upon the Enemy without Intermision. By which Means, they durst not approach to lay the *Portuguese* on board; and having brought no Ordnance with them, they could do their Foes no Harm at a Distance. It was to this Want of Cannon doubtless, that the *Portuguese* owed their Safety, and Boldness to face them so long. Having slain many of the *Moor*s, and sunk several of their Vessels, without a Man being hurt on their Side, the Enemy, towards Evening, hung out a Flag. The General at first, supposing it to be some Artifice, continued his Fire. But perceiving they did not take their Flag down, and most of his Ordnance being burst with shooting, at length gave over, and answered them with another Flag. Whereupon, a *Moor* was sent in a small Boat to desire a Truce till next Day, which was granted; on Condition, that they should quit the Harbour and put out to Sea, which they did. At the same Time, the General quitted his Station also, and came to anchor near them. But finding in the Night, that the Enemy came into their Boats with an Intent, as was supposed, to fire his Ships, he removed farther off, and as they still followed him, he

ordered a Gun to be shot at them, on which they retreated, and made away for *Kalekut*.^c

DE NUEVA, immediately after this, took his Leave of the King of *Kananor*, and set sail for *Portugal*, where he arrived safely with all his Ships.^d After his Departure, there came to *Kananor*, one of his Men, who had been taken Prisoner at *Kalekut*, and was sent by the *Samorin* to excuse what had been done both to him and the former General *Pedro Alvarez Cabral*, offering to lade his Ships, if he would come to *Kalekut*, and give him sufficient Pledges for his Security.

1502.
De Gama,
Returns
home

C H A P. VII.

The second Voyage of Vasco de Gama in 1502, being the fourth made by the Portuguese to the East Indies

S E C T. I.

De Gama arrives on the Coast of India. Takes a Ship bound for Mekka. Cruel Slaughter of the Pilgrims. Settles Peace, and a Factory at *Kranaganor*.

THE Account which *Pedro Alvarez Cabral* brought, shewed it was requisite, either to apply Force in making a Settlement in the *Indies*, or else to quit the Attempt. Some were of Opinion to desist, but the Credit of so great an Undertaking prevailed over the Dangers attending it. It also appeared in favour of a Prosecution, that though many were lost in the Enterprize, yet the Profit brought by those who returned, was so large, that it out-weighed the Consideration of the Damage. Another great Motive was, the Prospect of planting the *Romish* Religion in those Countries, and enlarging the Royal Titles. The King was sensible, that to attain a great Name among so many powerful and distant Nations, it was requisite to shew great Power. Therefore in *March* he sent out three Squadrons, the first, of ten Ships, commanded by *Vasco de Gama*, now on his second Voyage. The second, of five Ships, under *Vincent Sodre*, which was to scour the Coast of *Kochin* and *Kananor*, and hinder the *Moor*s, (that is, the *Turks* and *Arabs*) from trading in the *Indies*, by watching the Mouth of the *Red-Sea*. The third, was under *Stephen de Gama*, but all subordinate to *Vasco*. The Whole consisted of twenty Ships, and were gone before *Juan de Nova* arrived.

India
Trade
increasedLarge Fleet
sent out

The Command of this Fleet was first conferred on *Pedro Alvarez de Cabral*: But on far-

Vasco de
Gama
General

^a *De Faria* says, he took in Part of his Lading at *Kochin*, with a View perhaps to save the *Portuguese* Credit, on this Occasion. ^b Every Quintal is an hundred Weight. ^c According to *De Faria*, this Action was in the Bay of *Kalekut*. That there were five great Ships, and nine *Paraws* sunk. *De Barros* say, ten Merchant Ships, and nine *Paraws*. ^d *Maff* and *De Faria* say, he discovered the Island of *St Helena*, which was without Inhabitants. Which is another Proof of *Columbus*'s Mistake, mentioned before p. 22.

1502.
De Gama

ther Consideration, it was given to *Vasco de Gama*; a to whom the King delivered the Flag with great Honour, in the Cathedral Church, giving him the Title of Admiral of the Eastern Seas. With him returned the Ambassadors of *Kochin* and *Kanang*, who had been much honoured by his *Portugueze* Majesty. The two first Squadrons departed the third of *March*; the second, not till the first of *May*. Don *Vasco* met off *Cabo Verde*, a Caravel, bound for *Lisbon*, with much Gold from *La Mina*, some of which he shewed to the Ambassadors; and they, surprised, said, it did not agree with the Account the *Venetian* Ambassador, in *Portugal*, had given them, viz that the *Portugueze*, without the Help of *Venice*, could scarce put Ships to Sea. This was spoken through Envy, because they were, like to lose their Trade with *India*, by Way of *Egypt*.

1503.
1504.

HAVING doubled the *Cape of Good Hope*, and passed the Currents, Don *Vasco*, with four of the smallest Vessels, struck off for *Sofala*, and sent the rest of the Fleet before him to *Mozambique*. He went, pursuant to the King's Orders, not only to observe the Situation of that City, and see if there was a convenient Place for building a Fort, but also to inspect the Gold of the Country. He made a Friendship with the King, and obtained Leave to settle a Factory. After which, mutual Presents passed between them. Having spent twenty-five Days in this Transaction, he departed; and in turning out of the River, lost one of his Ships. But the Men were saved.

A Factory
at Mozam-
bik.

ARRIVING at *Mozambique*, he made Friendship with the King, who was so averse to it in his first Voyage; and obtained Leave to settle a Factory. The whole Intent whereof was, to provide Victualling for the *Portugueze* Fleets, which should touch here in their Voyage, either going or coming. From hence departing, he arrived at *Quiloa*, the twelfth of *July*, with a resolution to force the King to become tributary for his ill Usage to *Cabral*. As soon as he came to Anchor, *Ibrahim*, more through Fear than any thing else, paid him a Visit on Shipboard*. Don *Vasco*, knowing that he was not to be trusted; and having him in his Power, without farther Ceremony, threatened to confine him under the Hatches, unless he immediately agreed to pay his Master Tribute.

Quiloa tri-
butary.

THE Captive Tyrant promised 2000 *Muticals* of Gold yearly, and gave for Pledge one *Mehemet*, a wealthy Moor, whom he mortally hated, in order to get rid of him^b. For the Moment

Ibrahim got back to *Quiloa*, he refused to perform his Agreement, not so much to save the Money, as to provoke the General to kill his Security. But the *Moor*, finding the Tribute came not, thought fit to pay the Sum himself, and was released. Here *Stephen de Gama* joined the General with his Fleet, and both together proceeded in their Voyage. He was put by *Melinda*, and forced to water eight Leagues beyond it in a Bay whence, spreading his Fleet, that no Ship might escape him, he took several, but was most severe upon those of *Kalekut*.

BEING arrived on the Coast of *India*, near Mount *Deli*, to the North of *Kanunor*, he met a Ship of great Bulk, called the *Mori*, belonging to the *Sultan* of *Egypt*, which was very richly laden, and full of *Moors* of Quality, who were going on Pilgrimage to *Mekka*. This Ship being taken, after a vigorous Resistance, the General went on board, and sending for the principal *Moors*, ordered them to produce such Merchandizes as they had, threatening, otherwise, to have them thrown into the Sea. They pretended all their Effects were at *Kalekut*. But one of them, having been flung over board, bound Hand and Foot, the rest, through Fear, delivered their Goods. All the Children were carried into the General's Ship^c, and the Remainder of the Plunder, given the Sailors. After which, *Stephen de Gama*, by Don *Vasco's* Order, set Fire to the Vessel. But the *Moors*, having broken up the Hatches, under which they were confined, and quenched the Flames with the Water that was in the Ship, *Stephen* was commanded to lay them aboard. The *Moors*, being made desperate with the Apprehension of their Danger, received him with great Resolution, and even attempted to burn the other Ships.

NIGHT coming on, he was obliged to desist without doing his Work. But the General gave Orders, that the Vessel should be watched, that the Passengers might not, by Favour of the Darkness, escape to Land, which was near. All Night long, the (poor unhappy) *Moors* called on *Mohammed* to help them, (but the Dead can neither hear nor succour their Votaries). In the Morning, *Stephen de Gama* was sent to execute his former Orders. He boarded the Ship, and setting Fire to it, drove the *Moors* into the Poop, who still defended themselves, for some of the Sailors would not leave the Vessel, till it was half burnt. Many of the *Moors*, when they saw the Flames approach them, leaped into the Sea with Hatchets

Barbarous
Slaughters.

* *De Faria* says, he entered furiously and battered the Town. But the King becoming tributary, all was turned into Joy.

^b This Prince was an Usurper, and feared this *Mehemet* had a Design to dethrone him.

^c He had made a Promise to make them all Friars, and place them in *St. Mary's* Church at *Belem*, which he performed. *De Faria* says, their Number was twenty, and that he made so many *Christians* in Amends for one *Portugueze* turned *Mohammadan*.

1502. in their Hands; and swimming, fought with their Pursuers. Some even made up to, and attacked the Boats, doing much Hurt. However, most of them were at length slain; and all those drowned who remained in the Ship, which soon after sunk. So that of three hundred Persons, (among whom were thirty Women) not one escaped the Fire, Sword, or Water. 1502. De Gama's Answer was, that he should not talk of any such Matter, till the King had made him Satisfaction for the Goods that were in the Factory, when he consented to the Death of *Correa*, and the rest.

THE General being come to *Kananor*, sent to acquaint the King, he desired to speak with him for this Purpose, a wooden Bridge was made, which entered a good Way into the Water. This was covered with Carpets; and at the End, towards Land, a House of Wood was set up, furnished also with Carpets. The King arrived first, accompanied with 10000 *Nayres*, the Trumpets sounding, and other Instruments playing before him. Soon after, the General came, accompanied with all the Boats of the Fleet, furnished with Flags, musical Instruments, and Ordnance, under the Discharge of which he landed. There were carried before him two large Silver Basons gilt, to wash in, covered with Pieces of Coral, and other Things esteemed in the *Indies*. He was received at the Head of the Bridge by several *Nayres*, placed there for the Purpose; and the King came to the Door of the House to meet him. Where that Prince embraced him, and then they walked in together, to the Room of Audience, where there were placed two Chairs, on one of which the King sat down, though contrary to the Custom of the *Indians*, in Respect to the General. At this Interview, a Treaty of Friendship and Commerce was concluded, and a Factory granted at *Kananor*; in Consequence of which, the General laded some of his Ships, and then departed for *Kalekût*.

S E C T. II.

De Gama cannonades *Kalekût*.^a Narrowly escapes being taken. Firmness of the King of *Kochin*.^e

DE GAMA, being arrived in the Harbour, he took several *Paraws*, with about fifty *Malabars* in them, before it was known who he was: But forbore all Hostilities against the City to see if the King would take any Notice of him. In some Time, there came a Boat on board, carrying a Flag with a *Franciscan* Friar, whom at first Sight, they took for one of those left with *Ayres Correa*. On entering the Ship, he said, *Deo gratias*; and then they discovered he was a *Moor*. He made an Apology for coming in that Disguise, which, it seems, he put on, the more easily to be admitted, being sent with a Message

As soon as *De Gama* entered the Harbour of *Kochin*, *Trimumpara*^b sent Hostages on board, and came in Person to meet him on Land. At this Interview, *De Gama* delivered him King *Manuel's* Letter and Present. The Letter imported Thanks for the kind Treatment *Cabral* had met with, and Consent for settling a Factory at *Kochin*. The Present consisted of a Crown of Gold, thick set with Jewels; a Gold Collar, enamell'd; two Silver Fountains, wrought; two Pieces of figured Arras; a costly Pavilion, and a Piece of crimson Sattin, and another of Sendal: *Trimumpara* received it with Pleasure; and the

^a *De Faria* says, they were thrown into the Sea, to be carried on Shore by the Tide called by *de Barros*, *de Faria*, and others. But this last Author, in another Place, gives him the Name of *Uniamacoul*. See *Portug Asia*, vol 2. p 226.

^b He is so

1502. Pavilion being set up to shew the Use of it, a further Treaty of Peace was concluded within it. The King also gave a House for the Factory; and settled the Rates, which Spices were to be delivered at. This Agreement was reduced to Writing, and signed by *Trimumpara*, who sent the King of Portugal the following Present. Two gold Bracelets, set with Precious Stones; a Scarf for the Head used by the *Moors*, of silver Tissue two Yards and half in Length; two great Pieces of fine Bengal Calico, and a Stone as big as a Walnut, good against all Poisons. This Stone is taken out of the Head of a Beast, called in the *Indes*, *Bulgoldolph*^a, and very rare to be found.

Return of
De Gama
Jeküt, and
narrowly es-
caped.

WHILE *De Gama's* Ship was lading, a Messenger came from the *Samorin*, to acquaint him, that if he would return to *Kaleküt*, all his Goods should be restored him, and a Trade granted. The General ordered the Messenger to be confined^b, in order to punish him, if the *Samorin* proved deceitful: And against the Advice of all his Captains, determined to go alone to *Kaleküt*; saying, that, in Case of Necessity, he would retreat to *Sodre's* Squadron, which hovered on that Coast. On his Arrival in the Road, the *Samorin* sent him Word, that next Day every thing should be concluded. But as soon as he understood, that the General had left the rest of his Ships behind, he ordered thirty-four Paraws to go out and take him. They set upon *De Gama's* Ship suddenly, that to escape them he was obliged to cut one of his Cables, and make out to Sea. For all this they did not give over the Pursuit, but followed him so close, that he must infallibly have been taken but for *Sodre's* Ships, on Sight whereof the Paraws made off. At his Return to *Kochin* he ordered the Messenger to be hanged^c.

The *Samorin*
tempers
Trimumpara
ra

THE *Samorin* was much concerned at this. But finding he laid his Snares in vain, to take *De Gama*, he resolved to try whether he could persuade the King of *Kochin* to deny the *Portuguese* a Liberty of trading in this Port. With this View he wrote him a Letter, wherein he called the *Portuguese*, Robbers; representing the Danger that might attend entertaining such Guests, and the Displeasure it gave him. *Trimumpara* answered, that since they brought Money to lay out in his Country, it was his Interest

to encourage them; and that the *Samorin* would not be willing at his Request, to prohibit the *Moors* of *Mekka* from trading to *Kalküt*. The *Samorin* replied, that he was sorry to find the King of *Kochin* preferred the Friendship of *Christian* Strangers to his, and espoused his Enemies; advising him once more to abandon them, as he tendered his own Welfare.

1502.
De Gama.

IN Answer to this, the King of *Kochin* let the *Samorin* know, that he did not value his Threatning, and that he should never, through Fear of the Consequence be induced to do a base or pernicious Action. The *Samorin* finding he could not prevail by Intreaty, resolved to apply Force, as soon as the *Portuguese* was returned homewards. Mean Time he commanded twenty-nine large Ships to be fitted out, in order to attack them once more before they left the Coasts, imagining, that as the General's Fleet was heavy laden, his would be better able to deal with it.

Trimump-
a s
Integrity.

THE King of *Kochin* told *De Gama* nothing of what had passed between him and the *Samorin*, till he went to take his Leave; at which Time, as a farther Proof of his Integrity, he declared he would hazard the Lots of his Dominions, to serve the King of Portugal. The General, with many Expressions of Gratitude, assured him, that King *Manuel* would never forget so many Demonstrations, as he had given, of Friendship, and engaged, in his Master's Name, to afford him such effectual Succour, that it would be in his Power not only to secure his own Kingdom, but conquer others. Adding, that thenceforward such fierce War should be carried on against the *Samorin*, that far from being able to attack others, he would have enough to do to defend himself, and promised to send him a Fleet of Ships forthwith from *Kananor*. The King was the more pleased with this Declaration of the General, as it was spoken before his Nayres; who, in Friendship to the *Moors*, were sorry that a Factory had been granted the *Portuguese*^d.

De Gama's
A knowledge
ments.

DE GAMA having sailed from *Kochin*, about three Leagues from *Paderané* descryed the *Moorish* Fleet before-mentioned, which came to intercept him in his Passage. The General immediately bore down upon them, and *Sodre*, with two other Captains advancing before the rest, attacked two of the largest Ships with so much

Defats the
Portuguese
of
Kalküt.

^a *De Faria* calls it *Bulgoldolph*. ^b The same author says the Messenger was a *Bramen*, that he left his Son and Nephew as Hostages, and went with *De Gama* to *Kaleküt*, and was the Person who went between him and the *Samorin*. Also, that the General took with him a Caravel besides the Ship. ^c *De Faria* says the Messenger, Son and Nephew. ^d *De Barros*, *Maffi*, and *De Faria*, tell us, that *De Gama*, while he was at *Kochin*, received Ambassadors from the *Christians* of the Country about *Krangano*, before-mentioned, whose Number they sayed amounted to 30,000, that they knew he was an Officer of the most Catholic King of Europe, to whom they submitted themselves; delivering into his Hand the Rod of Justice, which was red, about the Length of a Scepter, the Ends tipped with Silver, and three Bells at the Top. They complained of being infested by the *Gentiles*, and were dismissed with Hopes of a powerful Assistance.

1503.
De Gama

Fury, that many of the Men leaped into the Sea, to avoid their Weapons. And *De Gama* coming up with the rest of the Fleet, the Remainder of the Enemies Vessels made towards Shore as fast as they could; nor would the General suffer his Ships to follow them for fear of the Shoals. Mean while the *Portuguese*, in their Boats, slew all the *Moor*s, who defended themselves, swimming in the Water, to the Number of 300 Persons. In the two Ships they found much *China* Ware, Silver Vessels gilt, and other rich Merchandize. But what exceeded all the rest, was an Image of Gold, weighing thirty Pounds, of a monstrous Shape. The Eyes were two Emeralds. Part of it was covered with a Garment of beaten Gold, curiously wrought and set with precious Stones. On the Breast of the Idol was a large Ruby, which gave as great a Light as if it had been Fire.

Sole 69.
in regard the
Coast.

THE Goods being taken out, the Ships were burnt, and *De Gama* proceeding to *Kananoor*, the King gave him a House for the Factory which he left there, consisting of twenty-four Men, who were to be furnished with Spices at a settled Price^a, as at *Kochin*. The two Nations were to defend each other, and the King of *Kananoor* was not to assist any Prince against *Trimumpara*. Then *De Gama* ordered *Sodre* to remain on that Coast till February, and if, in the mean Time, there was any Likelihood of War breaking out between the Kings of *Kalekut* and *Kochin*, he should winter at the latter Place. In case there was not, he was then to sail for the *Red-Sea*, and take all Ships of *Mekka*, bound to the *Indus*.

De Gama
leaves India

THE twentieth of December, 1503. *De Gama* departed for Portugal, with thirteen Ships,

^a *De Faria* says, Persons being appointed to settle Matters relating to Trade, in this Port, they differed about the Price of Spices, on which Occasion many Threats were sent to the King, who, through Fear, granted all he had denied to Entreaties. He makes *Trimumpara* as refractory at first, as either the *Samorin*, or King of *Kananoor*. For he says, when *De Gama* arrived at *Kochin*, he perceived those three Kings had combined to make him winter there, by Fraud, and joined their Fleets to destroy him. That not succeeding, a durable Peace was at length made with the King of *Kochin*, and that the King of *Kananoor* fearing from thence, that *De Gama* would not return to his Port, sent him Word he was as ready to comply with his Demand^b, as *Trimumpara*.

^b We shall here, by way of Note, for our Reader's Satisfaction, finish the Account of this Hero. *Don Vasco De Gama*, now Count of *Vidigueyra*, was in the Year 1524, appointed the Vice-Roy of India, by King *John* the Third. He set sail with fourteen Ships, and 5000 fighting Men. Three were lost in the Voyage, with all the Men of two. Being in the Sea of *Kambaya*, in a dead Calm, of a sudden the Vessels tossed, so that all gave themselves for gone; every one casting about how to save himself. One leaped over-board, thinking to escape that Way, and was drowned. Such as lay sick of Fevers, were cured with the Fright. *Don Vasco*, perceiving it was the Effect of an Earthquake, cry'd out aloud, *Courage, my Friends, for the Sea trembles for fear of you who are upon it*. To make amends for these Misfortunes, *D. George de Meneses*, one of the Captains, took a great Ship of *Mekka*, worth 60,000 Crowns. The new Vice-Roy being arrived at *Goa*, visited a few Ports, and gave necessary Orders for regulating Affairs, but had not Time to put any of his great Designs in Execution. For he died on Christmas Eve, after he had held the Government of India three Months. He was of a middle Stature, somewhat gross, and ruddy complexioned. He is painted with a black Cap, Cloak and Breeches, edged with Velvet, all slashed, through which appears the Crimson Lining. The Doublet of Crimson Sattin, and over it his Armour inlaid with Gold. *De Vasco* had a natural Boldness, for any great Undertaking. When angry he was terrible, patient under Fatigue, and hasty in Execution of Justice. In fine, fit for all that was intrusted to his Conduct, as Captain, as Discoverer, and as Vice Roy. He was the sixth in the Number of Governors, and second of Vice Roys

Kochin,

and came to *Mozambik*, where they refitted two that were leaky. At *Cape Corientes* they were detained by contrary Winds and Storms, which fell with sudden Flurries. *De Gama* arrived at *Cascias*, the first of September, where several Noblemen went to receive and accompany him to Court. He was preceded by his Page, who carried a Silver Balon, containing the Tribute of the King of *Zuiloa*. The King gave him an honourable Reception, justly due to his great Services, and made him Admiral of the *Indian* Seas. He conferred on him also the Title of Count of *Vidigueyra*, which was his own^b. Six Days after came into *Lisbon*, *Stephen De Gama*, whose Ship had been separated from the rest, at *Cape Corientes*; and, in the Way home, had lost its Mainmast.

1503.
Page 60.

CHAP. VIII.

Voyages and Transactions of the Portuguese, in India, from 1503 to 1507, with the Exploits of Pacheco Extrasted from Castaneda, de Barros, and de Faria y Soufa.

SECT. I.

The Samorin repulged Fort at Kochin. Factory at Koulan Mombas and Brava tributary.

THE *Samorin* envying the Advantage which *Trimumpara*, King of *Kochin*, made of the *Portuguese* Trade, and offended with him for encouraging the Enemies of the *Moor*s, who he supported, which might endanger the Loss of the Trade of *Arabia* and *Egypt* got together 50,000 Men at *Panam*, sixteen Leagues from

Trimu-
para's
osity.

1403.
Pacheco

Kochin, and made other Preparations for War. The People of *Kochin*, fearing so great a Power, were for delivering up the *Portuguese* to the *Samoir*, who demanded nothing more. But *Trimumpara* refused, and went out with three of his Nephews, and a small Force, to meet the Enemy. At the first Charge he was forsaken by some of his Nobles, yet assisted by the *Portuguese*, valiantly maintained a Pass. Till his Nephews being killed, wherof one was General, and himself wounded, after doing Wonders, he was forced to fly and secure himself in the Island *Vaspi*, near to and more tenable than *Kochin*, which the *Samoir* took and burnt; yet still he persisted not to deliver up the *Portuguese*. A notable Example of Fidelity in a Heathen, says our Author, scarce to be parallel'd among *Christians*!

Three Fleets
arrived.

WHILE the People of *Kochin* were besieged in the Island, there sailed from *Lisbon* nine Ships, under three distinct Commanders. The first was *Alonso* (or *Alfonso*) de *Albuquerque*, the second, *Francisco* de *Albuquerque*; and the third, *Antonio* de *Saldanna*. The three last were to cruize in the Mouth of the *Red-Sea*, against the Ships of *Mekka*, the others to return with their Lading. *Francis* de *Albuquerque* arrived first, with more Ships than he brought out, having met with those of *Vincente Sodre*, who was cruising upon the *Indian Coast*, and distressed by Storm, as also a Vessel that had been separated from *Don Vasco De Gama*. *Sodre* had taken four Ships of *Kalekut*, which he carried to *Kananor*, and burnt several small Vessels. But this happened before the Invasion of *Kochin*, to whose King he had offered his Assistance, but was not admitted*: Wherefore, sailing thence, he touched at *Sokotra* and *Guardafu*, and, on the Coast of *Arabia*, took some Vessels of *Kambaya* and *Kalekut*. Winter coming on, he put for Shelter into a Bay near the Islands *Kuriamuria*, and found the *Arabs* of that Coast called *Badwins*, who live by their Cattle, very tractable. After two Months Stay, they advised him to seek a good Harbour, to avoid being cast away in the Storms, which arose about that Time. *Sodre* would not credit them, believing they said it only to get rid of him. But, when it was too late, found they spoke the Truth, being lost with his Brother, and all the Men, in a sudden Tempest. The other Vessels after being in great Danger, and suffering much, through Hunger and Thirst, escaped, and met *Francisco* de *Albuquerque*, with whom they sailed to *Kochin*.

The Samo-
ir refused.

THE Commander, immediately on his Arrival, sent the King a Present into the Island, Part

whereof was 10,000 Ducats: Then going ashore, *Trimumpara* ran and embraced him, crying, *Portugal! Portugal!* which Words, all the People, with great Cries, repeated. And the *Portuguese*, to return the Civility, cried, *Kochin! Kochin!* *Francisco* comforted the King, giving him assured Hopes in the Assistance of his Ships, and the others he expected. Not to lose Time, he fell upon those who held the Island of *Kochin*, for the King of *Kalekut*, and killing many People, he expelled the rest. Thence he passed to *Vaspi*, and restored that Country to it's lawful Prince. The Territory of the Lord of *Repelim*, was wasted with Fire and Sword, and only four *Portuguese* lost in this Action.

1503.
Pacheco

THE Joy *Trimumpara* received in being restored by the Assistance of the *Portuguese*, moved him to grant them Leave to build a Fort in *Kochin*. The work was begun when *Alonso* de *Albuquerque* arrived, and it was called the Fort of *St. Yago*. A Church was likewise then built, dedicated to *St. Bartholomew*. Five hundred Men being put aboard some Vessels, taken from the Enemy, they burnt *Repelim*, after a stout Defence made by 2000 Nayres. *Alonso*, ambitious of performing some notable Exploit, by himself advanced against a Town, whence a Multitude of expert Heathens issuing, brought him into great Danger, which was increased by the Assistance of thirty-three Vessels of *Kalekut*. But his Brother *Francisco* coming up, they were put to Flight, and many killed, as were 700 in the Island *Kabalam*, where they thought to secure themselves. *Duarte Pacheco* destroyed another Town, killing many of the Inhabitants. As the *Portuguese* sailed, fifty Ships of *Kalekut* met them, and they (though victorious) being spent with Fatigue, were surprized at the Number; but the Cannon being well played, the Enemy fled.

First built at
Kochin

PEPPER was bought with some Expence of Blood. The Queen of *Koulam* offered Lading for two Ships. *Albuquerque* went thither and settled a Trade as at *Kochin*, and to manage it left behind a Factor, and twenty-six Men. The King of *Kalekut* perceiving the Success of the *Portuguese*, desired Peace, which was granted, upon their own Conditions. But after performing only a Part, he again prosecuted the War. *Trimumpara* having desired some able Commander might be left at *Kochin*, with a Number of Men to his Assistance, *Duarte Pacheco*, with his Ship, and two Caravels, and 110 Men, were sent there.

First built at
Kochin.

* *Castaneda* says, he was much importuned by the Factor *Correa*, to land; but that he would neither land his Men, nor stay on the Coast, under Pretence, that the *Samoir* did not make War on *Trimumpara* by Sea, and imputes the Loss of *Sodre* afterwards, as a Judgment for thus deserting the *Portuguese*, and their Protection, to hunt after Prizes.

1505.
PachecoFrancisco de
AlbuquerqueMachado
LimaBrava sub-
mits.

THE two *Albuquerque's* returned towards a with Frankincense; and forced ashore another, 1505.
Home *Alonso* arrived safe; and, among other that carried Pilgrims to *Mekka*.
Things, brought the King forty Pounds of Pearls, Pacheco.
and four hundred of the small, a Diamond of a
wonderful Bigness, and two Horses, one a *Per-*
jian, the other an *Arab*, which were held in
great Esteem, being the first that were brought
to the Kingdom *Francisco de Albuquerque*,
and the Ships under his Command, were never
more heard of. *Pedro de Ataide*, who followed
them, having escaped a Storm, was found with
his Men, at *Melinda*.

ANTONIO de Saldanna, the last of the three
Commanders, who was sent to cruise in the
Mouth of the *Red Sea*, having lost *Diego Fer-*
randez Pereira, came to an Anchor at *St Tho-*
mas's. Short of the *Cape of Good Hope*, was
made famous, a Place by the Name of *Aguada*
del Saldanna, or *Saldanna's Watering Place*, not
for any Water he took, but for the Blood of his
Men shed there, endeavouring to land. At this
Time *Ruy Lorenzo* was parted from him, by
a Storm, which drove him up to *Mozambique*,
whence he held his Course to *Quica*, where he
took some small Prizes. But an Ambition of do-
ing something more remarkable, carried him to
the Island *Zanzibar*, twenty Leagues short of
Mombassa [or *Mombasi*] where he took twenty
small Vessels, after which he appeared before the
Town of that Name, whose King designed to
take the Ship with a Number of *Paraws*. But
Lorenzo sending out his Long boat with thirty
Men, killed several, and took four *Paraws*. The
King appeared on the Shore with 4000 Men,
commanded by his Son, who was killed with
some others, the first Volley. Whereupon, one of
them running from the Crowd with Colours,
bearing the Arms of *Portugal*, Peace was pre-
sently concluded; that King agreeing to pay 100
Metics of Gold, yearly, as Tributary to *Por-*
tugal.

THENCE *Lorenzo* sailed to *Milinda*, whose
King was oppressed by him of *Mombassa*, for his
Friendship to the *Portuguese*. By the Way he
took two Ships, and three *Sambuks*, small Ves-
sels, and in them twelve Magistrates of *Brava*,
who, as such, submitted that City to the Crown
of *Portugal*, with the yearly Tribute of 500
Metics. The two Kings came to a Battle, and
parted upon equal Terms. But *Antonio de Sal-*
danna arriving, he of *Mombassa* came to an A-
greement. Beyond *Cape Guardafu*, and in the
Islands *Kanakani*, they worsted some *Moors*, who
would have hindered their Watering. On the
upper Coast of *Arabia* they burnt a Ship laden

S E C T. II

The Samorin's Armies defeated by Pacheco. Arts
to destroy him. Sues for Peace. Kalekut can-
nonaded. Kranganor and Panani burnt. Pa-
checo's hard Usage.

MEAN Time the Samorin of *Kalekut* hav- The Samorin
ing called together the Kings and Lords of
of *Malabar*, there resorted to him those of *Ta-*
nor, *Bespur*, *Kotugan* and *Korin*, with ten Lords
of equal Power, besides the lesser. They drew
together 50,000 Men, as well for Land as Sea:
For the Sea were 4000, in 280 *Paraws*, *Katins*
and *Tonis*, Vessels of several Sorts, with 382 Can-
nons to batter the new Fort. The rest was for
the Land, to attack the Ford of a River, that
passed to the Island, commanded by *Naubea Da-*
ring (Nephew and Heir to the King of *Kalekut*)
and by *Elankol*, Lord of *Repelim*.

THE King of *Kochin*, seeing many of his Defended by
Subjects desert, was in some Fear: But *Duarte Pacheco*
Pacheco, who commanded the *Portuguese*, encour-
aged him, and set himself in a Posture of De-
fence. Into the Ship he put twenty-five Men;
into the Fort, thirty-nine; into the Caravel,
twenty-six; into a Boat, twenty-three; he was
in another, with twenty-two. Besides these, three
hundred *Malabars* attended him. The King,
with his Forces, was to guard the City. With this
small Power he went to meet the Samorin, and
finding him quartered in a Village, attacked it,
and did much harm. There happened three
fierce Engagements about gaining the Pass. In
the first, the Enemy lost twenty *Paraws*, sunk by
the Cannon, 180 Persons of Note, and above
1000 private Men; in the second, nineteen *Pa-*
raws, and 360 Men; in the third, 62 *Paraws*
were sunk, and sixty fled. At the same Time
15,000 Men were put to the Rout by Land;
and among them the Samorin, while *Pacheco*
pursuing, burnt four Towns.

THE *Moors* who were with the King of *Ko-* Another Pe-
chin having given Intelligence to the Enemy, *sum*
Trimumpara allowed *Pacheco* to punish them.
Whereupon, securing five, he gave out they
were hanged, which the King and all his People
resented. The Samorin returns, and attempts a-
nother Ford. *Diego Perez* and *Pedro Raphael*,
with two Caravels, and some Boats, were post-
ed where the Lord of *Repelim* was to attack with
3000 Men, sustained by the Prince *Naubeadarig*.
At this Time 300 *Moors* deserted *Pacheco*, who

* *Mombasi* belonged to the *Portuguese*, for near 200 Years. But in 1698, the *Musfat Ara's* took it with
very little Trouble, and put twenty *Portuguese* to the sword

1505.
PachecoGreat Pre-
parations at
K. kut.Art fired of
the Sun on

wanting Powder, sent to the Prince of *Kochin*, a but he did not relieve him, the Messenger treacherously forbearing to deliver the Message. But *Pacheco*, overcoming all Difficulties, killed 650 of the *Samorin's* Men, who retired to a Grove of Palm-Trees, where nine were slain so near him, that he was sprinkled with their Blood. After this he lost 6000 more by the Plague.

AFTER this the King of *Kalekut* made great Preparations; and in the mean Time fatigued *Pacheco* with several Stratagems and Treacheries. The *Bramen* Conjurors proposed making a Powder, which being thrown into the Eyes of the *Portugueze*, should blind them, and so they would be easily overcome. Besides they had a new Invention of Castles that were to destroy them: And the *Moors* of *Kochin* were underhand bribed to poison the Water of the Island. The Powder was looked upon as ridiculous, but great Care was taken by *Pacheco* to prevent the Poison. The Castles were eight in Number, fifteen Feet high, each placed upon two Boats, and carrying many Men. *Pacheco* had 160 Men, divided into four Parts, the Ford, the Fort, the Caravels, and the Ship; and herein consisted the principal Strength of the Kingdom of *Kochin*. For of the 30,000 Men the King had at first, there were now but 8,000 left, many of the principal Men having deserted. The *Samorin* had brought 80,000 Men, and lost 20,000. Whilst the Towers were preparing, *Pacheco*, who was assaulted by a Number of Paraws, in one Attack killed some Men, and took five Boats, in another eight, with thirteen Cannons.

Six bold Nayres offered to kill him, and in order thereto, came over as Deferters; but he having Intelligence, apprehended and sent them to the King. The *Samorin* gave out, that the *Portugueze* at *Kochin* were all killed, to the Intent those who resided at *Kananor* and *Koulun*, should be destroyed. This brought them into great Danger; one or two were killed, and many wounded. The King of *Kochin* was resolved to endure the utmost Miseries, rather than abandon the *Portugueze*; but fearing those few must at last be overpowered by the Multitude of the Enemy, earnestly entreated *Pacheco* to quit the Enterprize. *Pacheco* bid him be of good Courage, and not dishearten his Subjects with any Signs of Fear. To cheer up the *Portugueze*, he went aboard the Ship, and made a most pathetic Speech, which gave new Vigour to them all; but much more his Example at that very Time. For scarce was the Speech ended, when the Enemy came to assail him, and burn his Ships with the Castles. But *Pacheco* threw over long Beams, one End whereof resting against the Ship, the other hindered the Approach of those flaming Towers.

VOL. I. No. 3

THE Enemy appeared with 290 small Vessels, well stored with Men and Artillery, and eight Castles, one carrying forty Men, two, thirty-five each; and every one of the other five, thirty Men, with the Fireworks in front. The Shore was covered by 30,000 Men, with good Artillery, and at the Head of them, the Lord of *Repim*, with a vast Number of Pioneers. The Fight began, the Odds being almost three hundred Vessels to three. At first the Artillery did no great Hurt. But being continued, they tore those Towers to Pieces, and when the Smoke was somewhat allayed, the Sea appeared covered with broken Boats, Arms, dead Bodies, and others struggling with Death. The Fight was renewed with great Loss to the Enemy, and not one *Portugueze* killed. Next Day the *Samorin* returned to the Charge, and was beaten off with greater Damage. Thus, having lost 18,000 Men in the Space of five Months, by the Advice of his *Bramen*, he retired to do Penance, and, by Consent of his Councils, desired a Peace, which the King of *Kochin* granted. At this Time *Pacheco*, pursuant to a Message from the Factor at *Koulun*, went thither, and made five Ships of *Moors* submit, who obstructed the Market of Pepper; which afterwards he took at their own Rate, without doing them any harm.

KING *Emanuel* being informed by Don *Vasco De Gama*, how necessary it was to appear with a greater Force in *India*, fitted out a Fleet of thirteen Ships, the biggest had yet been built in *Portugal*, with 1200 Men on board, and gave the Command of them to *Lope Soarez*. The first Land of *India* he touched at was *Anbediva*, where *Antonio de Saldanna*, and *Ruy Lorenzo* were refitting, in order to cruise on the Coast of *Kambaya*, against the *Arabs* of *Mikka*. But *Lope Soarez* took them along with him to *Konanor*, where he staid to give the necessary Orders; and then appearing before *Kalekut*, had some Prisoners taken in the late War, delivered to him. But because they did not give up all, he, for two Days, battered the City, whereof he ruined great Part, and killed 300 Inhabitants. Then sailing to *Kochin*, (at what Time *Pacheco* was upon his Return to *Koulun*) the King informed him of the Damage he received from *Kranganor*, a Town but four Leagues distant, and fortified by the *Samorin*.

LOPE SOAREZ, with great Secrecy, provided twenty Vessels, and sailed with them up the River, where he found five Ships, and eighty Paraws, well manned, which were, by two of the foremost Ships, burnt after a sharp Engagement. *Trimumpara* was to have joined him, but came too late. A Multitude of *Indians* and *Moors*, with Showers of Arrows, endeavoured to hinder his Landing, but the Musqueteers made Way

1505

Page 57

Kalekut
annoyed.Kranganor
burnt

1507
Almeyda

Way; and having reached the Town, burnt it a and Mace of *Banda*, the Sandal of *Timor*, the Camfir of *Borneo*, the Gold and Silver of *Luconia*, with all the various other Riches, Spices, Gunis, Perfumes, and Curiosities of *China*, *Java*, *Siam*, and other Kingdoms, were carried to the Market of the City *Malakka*, seated in the Peninsula of that Name, supposed to be the *Aurea Chersonesus*. From whence the Inhabitants of the Western Countries, as far as the *Red-Sea*, fetched them, dealing by way of Barter. For no Money was used in their Traffic; Silver and Gold being less wanted in those Countries than foreign Commodities. This Trade it was that enriched the Cities of *Kalkut*, *Kambaya*, *Ormiz*, and *Aden*; which added, to what they brought from *Malakka*, the Rubies of *Pegu*, the Stuffs of *Bengala*; the Pearls of *Kalekare*, the Diamonds of *Naisinga*, the Cinnamon, and richer Rubies of *Ceylon*, the Pepper, Ginger, and other Spice of the Coast of *Malabar*, and such other Places as Nature had enriched therewith. From *Ormiz* they were conveyed, up the *Persian Gulph*, to *Basrah*, at the Mouth of *Euphrates*; and thence distributed by Karawans, through *Armenia*, *Tribisond*, *Tartary*, *Aleppo* and *Damascus*. And then, from the Port of *Barut* in *Syria*, the *Venetians*, *Genoese*, and *Catalonians* carried them to their respective Countries. Such as went up the *Red-Sea*, were landed at *Tor* or *Suez*, Towns towards the Bottom of that Gulph, from whence they were conveyed by Karawans, to *Kairo* in *Egypt*, and so down the *Nile* to *Alexandria*, where they were shipped off.

1507.
AlmeydaPanani
burnt

LOPE SOAREZ left *Manuel Tellez Barreto*, with four Ships, to secure the Fort of *Kochi*, and set sail, in order to return home, but resolved, in his Way, to fall upon *Panani*, a Town subject to *Kalkut*. He was met by twenty Paraws, which, freely bestowing their Shot, drove him into a Bay, where there waited seventeen great Ships, well stored with Cannon, and provided with 4000 Men. After a fierce Engagement, the Ships were all burnt with their Lading, which was very rich, and 700 Turks drowned, besides what perished by Fire and Sword, with the Loss only of twenty-three Portuguese. *Soarez* sailed hence the Beginning of *January*, and arrived at *Lisbon* on the 22^d of *July*, 1506, with thirteen victorious Ships laden with Riches, three were of the foregoing Years Fleet. Of his own he lost *Pedro Mendoza*, who being stranded fourteen Leagues from *Aguada de S. Blas*, was never more heard of. One of the other three was that of *Diego Fernandez Peteyra*, who, after taking several Prizes, on the Coast of *Melinda*, discovered the Island *Sokotra*.

Pacheco ill-
rewarded.

THE King placed *Duarte Pacheco* (who had so bravely defended *Kochin*) by his Side, under a Canopy, and went with him, in that Manner, to Church, to honour his great Valour: But soon after imprisoned, and suffered him to die miserably. A terrible Example of the Uncertainty of royal Favours, and the little Regard that is had to true Merit!

Obfuscated
the Portu-
guese.

C H A P. IX.

Exploits of the Portuguese, in the Year 1507. under Don Francisco de Almeyda, first Vice-Roy of India; extracted from the same Authors.

S E C T. I.

Course of the Indian Trade, before the Portuguese Discoveries. East Coast of Africa, when settled by the Arabs. Quiloa and Mombassa taken. Ports built at Anchediva and Kananor.

Course of In-
dian Trade.

BEFORE these Discoveries, Spices were brought to *Europe* with vast Trouble and Charge. The Clove of *Molukko*, the Nutmeg

* For a further Account of the Matter, see the Introduction to this Volume. ^b This was *Almalek al Ashraf Abu'l Nefi Sayf oddin Kansu al gauri*, commonly called *Campson Gauri*, the 24th Soltan of *Egypt*, of the *Chircaffian Mamluks*, who began his Reign in the Year 1503, and ended it in 1516, being slain in Battle with Soltan *Selim Khan*, Emperor of the *Turks*, near *Aleppo*, whose Expedition against *Imael Sefi*, Shâh or King of *Persia*; he endeavoured to obstruct. See *Pocock's Suppl ad Abulfarez Hist. Dynast.* p. 29. & *D'Herbelot Biblioth. Orient. Art. Kansu al Gauri*, p. 249.

extend

1507.
Almeida.Large Fleet
arrived.

extend the Jurisdiction of the Roman See: Which was enough to reconcile his Holiness to them.

ON the twenty-fifth of *March*, 1507, a Fleet of twenty-two Ships, sailed from *Lisbon*, carrying 1500 Soldiers, commanded by Don *Francisco de Almeida*; who went with the Title of Vice-Roy of *India*. The second of *July* there happened a terrible Storm, which separated the Fleet, when three Men being carried overboard, two were lost But the third, named *Fernando Lorenzo*, crying to the Ship to have an Eye after him, till next Morning, kept above Water, and was then taken up alive. *Almeida* arrived at *Quilba* with only eight Vessels, and having saluted the Port without being answered, studied Revenge. A Council being called, it was resolved to erect a Fort there, according to King *Emanuel's* Desire.

The Coast of
Mozambique
is called

FROM *Cape Guardafu*, the most Eastern Point of *Africa*, to *Mozambique*, is a hollow Coast like a Bow when bent, extending 550 Leagues From *Cape Mozambique* to *Cape Corientes*, 170 Leagues, thence to the *Cape of Good Hope*, 340 Leagues. Hence the Coast runs Northward, rounding a little to the West, as far as the Kingdom of *Kongo*. From whence drawing a Line cross the Continent, Eastward, there remains to the Southward a large Peninsula, or Tongue of Land, to which the *Persians* [or *Arabs*] have given the Name of *Kaffaria*, and to the Inhabitants that of *Kafirs*; which signifies a rude People, without Law or Government^a. Beyond this, on the East, for above 200 Leagues Northward, runs the Coast called *Zanguebar*^b. But the *Arabs* and *Persians* give this Name to all the Coast, as far as the *Cape of Good Hope*. Above *Zanguebar*, as far as the Point *Guardafu*, and Mouth of the *Red-Sea*, is that Part which the *Arabs* call *Ajam*^c, or *Ajana*, inhabited by *Arabs*, and the Inland, by heathen *Blacks*.

The Inhabitants,

MOST of this Coast is very low, being subject to Inundations, and covered with impenetrable Woods, which make it excessive hot and unhealthy. The Natives are black, with curled Hair. In Religion they are Idolaters, and given to Superstition, that, upon frivolous Motives, they give over the most important Designs: Thus the King of *Quiloa* at this Time failed to meet Don *Francisco de Almeida*, because a black Cat crossed his Way at coming out. The Cattle, Fruit and Grain, is answerable to the Wilderness of the Country. The *Moors* who inhabit the

Coast and adjacent Islands, seldom till the Ground but feed upon wild Beasts, and some loathsome Things. Those who live more within Land, and have Commerce with the barbarous *Kafirs*, make use of some Milk. Nature has stored the Country with much Gold, that those People might inhabit it, and the Covetousness of *Europeans*, though at such a Distance, found them out.

IT was Covetousness that first drew thither the *Arabs*, called *Ommazzadi*, that is, Subjects of *Zayde*, who built two considerable Towns, only sufficient to secure them against the *Kafirs*. They continued so, till great Numbers of others, from the Ports about the City of *Lazah*, forty Leagues from the Island *Baharem*^d, in the *Persian* Gulph, came over thither, and first planted *Magado*, then *Brava*, of which Settlement the former was the Metropolis. The first *Arabs* separated from these, and mixing with the *Kafirs*, became *Baduis*^e. Those who first had the Trade of the Mine of *Sofala*, were from *Magado*, which they discovered accidentally. From thence they spread themselves farther Southward, but never durst pass *Cape Corientes*, a point opposite to the South Westermost Part of the Island *Madagascar*, or *St. Laurence*, and takes it's Name from the violent Current of Water, which often endangers Ships there.

ALONG these Coasts they possessed themselves of *Quiloa*, *Mombaza*, *Melinda*, the Isles of *Pemba*, *Zanzibar*, *Monfia*, *Comora*, and others. *Quiloa* was the chief of all their Plantations, and from thence many others were propagated, particularly on the Coast of *Madagascar*. The Sea, by Degrees, wearing away the Land on both Sides, made *Quiloa* an Island. The Soil bears many Palm and Thorn-trees, divers Herbs and Plants; Cattle, wild Beasts and Birds, much like those of *Spain*^f. The Buildings also are after the *Spanish* Manner, flat at the Top, with Gardens and Orchards behind. On one Side is the royal Palace, built in the Manner of a Fort; the Gate towards the Sea, opposite to the anchoring Place, where the *Portuguese* Fleet, at that Time, rode.

DON *Francisco* landing at the Head of 500 Men, he, with his Son *Lorenzo*, attacked the City in two Places; where entering, *Amir Ibrahim* fled, and set up in the Field *Portuguese* Colours, which stopt the Pursuit till he had got over to the Continent, with his Wives and Riches.

^a *Kafir*, in *Arabic*, signifies an Infidel or Unbeliever. A name bestowed by the *Mohammedans*, on all who are not of their Religion. But chiefly those who use Images in Worship. Whence most *Christians* are called *Kafirs* by them.

^b Rather *Zembar*, or the Coast of *Zemba*, a Negro Nation, who formerly occupied all that Coast, before the *Arabs* settled there.

^c *Ajam* or *Ajmi*, among the *Arabs*, signifies the same as *Barbarians* among us. But we take the true Name to be *Ajan*, the *Portuguese* putting *m* for *n* at the End of Words, when the preceding Vowel is long.

^d Rather *Babrayn*, i. e. the two Seas, being the *Arabic* dual of *Bahr*, the Sea.

^e Properly *Badwīs*, that is, People of the Desert: The same called by us, corruptly, *Badouins* and *Badwies*.

1507.
Almeyda

The City was plundered, without the Loss of a single Portuguese, though a great Number of the Enemy was killed. *Ibrahim* was but an Usurper, though the forty-fourth Possessor of that Island. When Things were settled *Almeyda* declared *Mohammed Ankeni* (*Ibrahim's* Relation, who had been serviceable to the Portuguese) King of that Place, putting a Crown of Gold on his Head, with great Pomp. The new King at the same Time declared, that had the lawful King *Aljudail*, murdered by the late Usurper, been living, he would have resigned the Crown to him; and actually appointed *Aljudail's* Son his Successor, though he himself had Children. A rare Example of Moderation!

Fort built.

IN twenty Days the Fort was raised, into which the Vice-Roy put 550 Men, and leaving a Caravel and Brigantine to cruize there, on the eighth of *August* sailed with thirteen Ships for *Mombaza* (or *Mombassa*) seated like *Quiloea*, in an Island, which is about fourteen Leagues in Compass. The City is beautiful and strong, with a large Bay for Shipping. Two Vessels that were sent to found the Bay, were played upon by a Platform, which commanded it, with eight Pieces of Cannon: But a Ball falling luckily among the Enemies Powder, obliged them to quit the Work; and, after driving them from two lesser Batteries, the Fleet entered without farther Resistance. *Don Francisco* then sent to burn the Ships of *Kambaya* in the Port; and, landing his Men, entered the Town the fifteenth of *August*, while the King fled out at the other End. In this Action were lost only five Portuguese; of the *Moors*, 1513 were killed, and 1200 taken. After which the City being plundered was burnt to the Ground.

Mombassa taken and burnt.

Fort at Anchorediva

THENCE *Almeyda* departed for *India*; and coming to *Anchediva*, there built a Fort, into which he put 80 Men, and then sailed to *Onor*, on the Coast of *Malabar*; where being ill received, he burnt the Town, and the Ships that were in the Harbour. Here the Vice-Roy was wounded with an Arrow; and a Party sent to attack 1500 of the Enemy, had like to have been defeated. But farther Mischief was prevented by *Timoja*, Governor of the City, a Man of graceful Presence; who excusing his King, and, in his Name offering Vassalage to *Portugal*, appeared *Almeyda*.

Fort at Kananor

THE Vice-Roy then sailed to *Kananor*, where he had an Interview with the King, who brought with him 5000 Men well armed, and gave him Leave to build a Fort in the Harbour, where he left *Lorenzo de Brito* with 150 Men, and two Vessels, to cruize upon the Coast. Being informed at *Kochin*, that all the Factory at *Koulun* had been killed by the *Moors*, he sent his Son thither, with three Ships and three Caravels,

1507.
Almeyda.

which burnt twenty-four Ships (belonging to *Kalekut*, and other Places) there prepared to receive them; only a few of the *Moors* being saved by swimming. *Almeyda* at *Kochin* intended to have crowned *Trimumpara* its King, to reward his Fidelity and Gallantry; but being retired to a religious Life, it was thought fit to bestow that Honour upon *Nambeadora*, his Nephew and Successor, who was inaugurated in great Solemnity, with a Crown of Gold set with Jewels, carried from *Portugal* for that Purpose.

S E C T. II

Fort built at Sofala. The Country described. Strange Distress of Portuguese. Confederacy to drive them out of India. Seylan discovered. Brunjan burnt

KING *Emanuel* sent *Pedro de Annaya*, after *Don Francisco*, with six Ships to build a Fort at *Sofala*, famous for its Gold Trade: To secure which, he had already caused a Fort to be built at *Quiloea*, another at *Mozambik*, and a Factory to be settled at *Melinda*. *Annaya* raised a Fort there, strong, though of Wood, with Leave of the King, who imagined that the Portuguese would be soon obliged to quit it, by reason the Country was unhealthy. But finding himself deceived, he took the Opportunity, when *Annaya* had sent away three of his Ships, and his Men were weakened through Diseases, caused by the bad Air, to assault the Place with 5000 *Kafirs*: But great Havock was made with the Cannon, though only thirty-five Portuguese were able to bear Arms. Afterwards falling with fifteen or twenty *Moors*, they drove the Enemy into a Wood of Palm-trees; and attacking the Town by Night, with a few Men, entered the King's House, who stood behind the Door, with a Symeter, and wounded *Annaya* in the Neck. But was soon killed, with many more. Next Day his Son, with all the *Moors*, assaulted the Fort, but in vain; for the Fright cured many of the Sick, who joined in the common Defence. Afterwards the two Brothers fell out about the Succession; and *Annaya* being gained by *Soleymán*, crowned him: Who, for his own Security, made a strong Alliance with the Portuguese.

Fort raised at Sofala.

The King killed.

HERE *Annaya* found twenty Portuguese in a miserable Condition. At *Cape Corientes*, being no longer able to keep their Ship above Water, they ran her ashore. After which, refusing to obey their Captain *Lope Sanchez*, they divided into several Companies, and so travelled through those unknown Countries. They suffered extreme Hardships before they reached *Sofala*. All were lost except those twenty, and five found by *Antonio de Magallanes*, in the River of *Quiloame*.

Strange Distress.

1508.
Almeyda.Sofala
Country

THE Kingdom of *Sofala*^a, is a large Tract of Land, seven hundred and fifty Leagues in Circumference; subject to the *Monomotapa*, whose Empire bears the same Name. 'Tis watered by the *Rio del Esperitu Santo* and *Cuama*, the latter navigable two hundred and fifty Leagues. These, and many other Rivers that fall into them, are famous for their Golden Sands. Most Part of the Land enjoys a temperate Air, is pleasant, wholesome, and fruitful. Here are reared great Flocks of Sheep, with whose Skins, the Natives are clothed, because of the cold South Winds. Along the Bank of the *Cuama*, the Country is mountainous, covered with Woods, and watered with many Rivers, which make it delightful. Here it is the best peopled, and the common Residence of the *Monomotapa*. It is stocked with Elephants, (consequently Ivory) and Mines of Gold, encompassed thirty Leagues about with Mountains, on the Tops whereof, the Air is serene and clear. They are called the Mines of *Manua*, fifty Leagues South-West of *Sofala*. There are others a hundred and fifty Leagues distant, none then much valued by their Owners. Here are some Buildings of wonderful Structure, with Inscriptions of unknown Characters. But the Natives know nothing of their Foundation.

The Inhabitants.

THE Inhabitants believe in one God, under the Name of *Mozimo*; and use no Images. Witchcraft, Theft, and Adultery, are most severely punished by them. They have as many Wives as they can maintain: Those of the King are above a thousand, but the first commands the rest, and her Children inherit. In their Funerals they are very superstitious. Their Cloathing is Cotton, the better Sort mixed with some Gold Threads. The Houses of Wood. The King's Attendance, more ceremonious than great. His Guard two hundred Dogs; and is always followed by five hundred Jesters. He is Sovereign over many Princes; and because they rebel, always keeps their Heirs about him. There are no Lawsuits among them. They fight a-foot. Their Arms are Arrows, Javelins or Darts, Daggers, and small sharp Hatches. The Women are so much respected, that if the King's Son meets one, he gives her the Way, and stops till she pass. The Mines of *Sofala* were first possessed by the *Moors* of *Magadoxa*; afterwards by those of *Quiloa*, whose Kings enjoyed them, till *Rusef*, one of their Governors, rebelled, and usurped the Sovereignty to himself, assuming the Title of King; with whom *Pedro de Annaya* now treated.

Confederacy
against the
Portuguese.

WHILST these Things happened at *Sofala*, in *India*, the *Samorin* of *Kalekut*, had stirred up the

Soltán of *Egypt*; and hoped, with his Assistance, to drive the *Portuguese* out of those Seas. This was not carried so privately, but the King of *Kochin* had Intelligence of it, and advertised the Vice-Roy *Almeyda*; who sent his Son *Lorenzo* with eleven Sail, to prevent the Design. As he visited some Ports, News was brought him, that in the Road of *Kananor*, was a Fleet of two hundred and sixty *Paraws*, whereof sixty exceeded our Ships in Bulk. He directs his Course toward them, and after a very sharp Engagement, they were put to Flight, and some taken, but many sunk, and obliged to run aground. With great Loss to the Enemy, and of his own, only five or six Men. Soon after, the Fort of *Anubediva* was beset by sixty well armed Vessels of *Moors* and *Gentiles*, commanded by a Renegado. But hearing that *Lorenzo* was coming to its Relief, they went off with all possible Speed.

1508.
Almeyda.

THE *Moors* perceiving their Trade was cut off by the *Portuguese*, thought to shun them by keeping out at Sea in their Voyage to *Sumatra* and *Malakka*; where they went for Spice, striking through the *Maladive* Islands, and bearing away South of *Ceylon*. The Vice-Roy sent his Son from *Kochin*, with nine Ships, to intercept that Course: But the Pilots wandering through unknown Seas, discovered that Island. They anchored at the Port of *Gale*, where many *Moors* were lading Cinnamon, and taking in Elephants for *Kambaya*. They, fearful of Don *Lorenzo's* Anger, presented him, in the Name of the King, with 400 Bahars of Cinnamon. He well understood the Contrivance; but thought it at that Time, better to dissemble, and content himself with the Present, and Discovery of *Ceylon*. Planting there a Cross, with an Inscription signifying the Time of his Arrival.

S. van
discovered

IN his Return to *Kochin*, he fell upon the Town of *Biramjam*^b, which he burnt down, putting all to the Sword, in Revenge for the *Portuguese* killed at *Koulun*; because that Town belonged to this Crown. Mean while *Pedro de Annaya*, and most of his Men died at *Sofala*; and not long after, the Fort of *Quiloa* was raised by the *Portuguese* themselves. All the Effect of their ill Usage towards the Natives, proceeding from their boundless Avarice and Pride.

Brinjan
burnt.

S E C T. III.

De Cunna and Albuquerque sent to India. Oja taken. Lamo submits, and Brava burned.

THE King being informed by *Diego Fernandez Piteyra*, that there were *Christians* sent to *India*, at *Sokotra*, who were subject to the *Moors*, he

More Forces
sent to
India.

^a This Coast is now called *Sena* by the *Portuguese*, who have the whole Trade along it. See *Hamilton's new Account of the East Indies*, vol. 1. p. 8. ^b Or *Brinjan*, where the *English* had afterwards a Factory for some Time.

1508.
Ameyda

ordered *Tristan de Cunna*, and *Alonso de Albuquerque*, to direct their Course thither, and take the Port; to the Intent his Fleet might afterwards winter there, and so the Navigation of that Sea be secured. On the sixth of *March*, 1508, they sailed from *Lisbon* with thirteen Vessels, and thirteen hundred fighting Men, whereof some (being infected with the Plague, at that Time raging in the City) died by the Way. When they came under the Line, the Sickness left them. They passed in Sight of Cape *St. Augustin* in *Brazil*, and in crossing the vast Ocean between that Place and the *Cape of Good Hope*, *Tristan de Cunna* run so far to the Southward, that some of his Men perished with Cold, and he discovered the Islands still called by his Name. Here being assaulted by a Storm, all the Ships were parted, each running a different Course, till they met again at *Mozambik*, except *Alvaro Tellez*, who being driven as far as Cape *Guardafu*, took six Ships, so laden with all Sorts of Goods, that from them to his own Vessel, he made a Bridge of Bales, thrown into the Sea, over which the Men passed as on dry Land.

Come to Ma-
dagaskar.

RUY PEREYRA, who fell into *Matatanna*, a Port of *Madagaskar*, being informed it abounded in Spice, especially *Ginger*, invited thither *Tristan de Cunna*, who came and anchored in a Bay; which his Son *Nunno de Cunna*, called *de Donna Maria de Cunna*, after a Lady he courted. Others name it *Of the Conception*. At a Town, inhabited by *Moors*, and governed by a Sheikh, in a close Bay, which receives the great River *Lulungan*, they had a Skirmish, and found the Island produced little *Ginger*.

Proceed to
Melinda.

HENCE *de Cunna* sent *Alonso de Albuquerque* with four Sail to *Mozambik*, where coming, afterwards they proceeded to *Melinda*, whose King obliged him to fall upon *Oja*; a City, which being assisted by the King of *Mombassa* infested him. The *Arabs* inhabited this Country, where are seen some ancient and wonderful Structures. Each City, and almost Village, has a King, whom they call Sheikh; the chief are *Quitau*, *Zanzibar*, and *Mombassa*: But he of *Melinda* pretends to be ancientest, deducing his Pedigree from those of *Quitau*, a City eighteen Leagues from him, which though ruined, shews the Footsteps of its former Grandeur, having been superior to *Luziva*, *Parimunda*, *Lamen*, *Jaka*, *Oja*, and other its Neighbours. The Country is watered by the River *Gulimanja*. *George Alfonso* going up this River five Days, saw on the Banks impenetrable Woods, and in the Water, an infinite Number of Sea Horses.

Oja taken.

TRISTAN DE CUNNA (with six Ships)

appeared before the City *Oja*, standing seventeen Leagues from *Melinda*, on an open Shore, secured with a Wall towards the Land, which hides it from the *Kafirs*. He sent the Sheikh Word, that he had important Affairs to communicate with him. Who answered, that he was a Subject of the Soltan of *Kairo*, head *Khalifah* of the House of *Mohammed*, therefore could not treat with People that were so much his Enemies. *Tristan*, considering the Danger of Delays, as soon as Day appeared, divided his Men into two Parts in Boats, one Part commanded by *Alonso de Albuquerque*, the other by himself. And tho' the Sea seemed to favour the *Moors*, who stood on the Shore to hinder their Landing, they were forced to fly, entering at one Gate, and running out at the other.

1508.
Ameyda

NUNNO DE CUNNA, and *Alonso de Nombas*, pursued the King, with many of his Men, into a Wood of Palm Trees, and killed him in the Midst of them. *George Silveira*, perceiving a grave *Moor*, who led a beautiful young Woman through a Path in the Wood, ran at him, and the *Moor*, making Signs to the Woman to fly, whilst they fought, she followed him, signifying, she had rather die, or be taken with him, than escape alone. And *Silveira* seeing them strive who should give the greatest Demonstration of Affection, let them both go away; saying, God forbid my Sword should part so much Love. The Town was plundered, and then burnt with such Precipitation, that some of the *Portuguese* perished in the Flames.

The ship
killed.

THE City of *Lamo*, fifteen Leagues distant, knowing what had happened, its Sheikh came and submitted himself, offering a Tribute of 600 *Mitcals* of Gold yearly, and paid the first Year in Hand. The Fleet went on to the City *Brava*, a populous Place, before conquered, but then in Rebellion, with 6000 armed Men on the Shore. But *de Cunna*, and *Albuquerque*, next Day landing in two Bodies, in Spite of Showers of Arrows, Darts, and Stones, scaled the Walls, and routed the *Moors*; after washing the Streets with their Blood, and killing so many, that their Number was not known. Of the *Portuguese*, forty-two were lost, half through Covetousness. For overloading a Boat, they were drowned with the Spoil, barbarously acquired, by cutting off the Hands and Ears of Women, to save Time in taking off their Bracelets and Earrings. The City being burnt and plundered, *de Cunna* set Sail; and met off of Cape *Guardafu*, *Alvaro Tellez*, who had been in a Storm with the rich Booty before spoken of. Having discovered the Cape, he stood for

Lamo sub-
mitted, and
Brava burnt.

A *Mitcal* is a Coin of about a Ducat Value.

S E C T.

1508.

Almeida

S E C T. IV.

Sokotra described. Its Inhabitants Christians. Taken, and the King slain. The Samorin's Arms. Barbarous Action of a Portugueze. Panani taken with great Slaughter

Sokotra, or
Sokotora
described.

SOKOTORA [or *Sokotra*] is an Island, twenty Leagues in Length, and nine in Breadth, it lies almost East and West, in the Latitude of twelve Degrees forty Minutes. It is the biggest about the Mouth of the *Red-Sea*, but has no Ports fit for any Number of Ships to winter. Athwart the Middle of it runs a Ridge of Hills, as high as the Clouds, yet the Sand of the Shore is carried up to the Top, by the North Winds. This renders it barren, not only of Plants, but Trees; excepting some small Valleys, that are under Shelter of those Winds. It is distant from the Coast of *Arabia* fifty Leagues; and thirty from *Cape Guardafu*. The Ports most used by the *Portugueze* are *Zoko*, inhabited by *Moors*, *Kalan-sea* to the Westward, and *Boni* to the Eastward. The Natives are unpolished. The Valleys, sheltered from Sand, produce Apple, and Palm Trees, and the best Aloes, which, for its Excellency, is called *Zocotorinos*. The common Food is Maiz, or *Indian Wheat*, Tamarinds, and Milk.

Inhabited by
Christians.

THEY are all Jacobite *Christians*, like the *Abissins*. The Men use the Names of the Apostles, the Women chiefly that of *Mary*. They worship the Cross, which they wear on their Cloaths, and set up in their Churches; where they pray thrice a Day in the *Chaldean* Language, alternatively, as in a Choir. They receive but one Wife; use Circumcision, Fasting, and Tithes. The Men, comely; the Women, so manly, that they follow the War, and live like *Amazons*. Some of them, for Propagation, making Use of such Men as arrive there; and even bringing some by Witchcraft. Their Cloathing, some Cloth and Skins, their Habitations, Caves; their Weapons, Stones and Slings. They were subject to the *Arabian King of Kasheen* (or *Kassim*).

DE CUNNA found here an indifferent Fort, not ill manned, nor unprovided. Being provoked by the Sheikh's Answer to his Message, he resolved (though it were dangerous) to land with *Albuquerque*. The first who leaped ashore, was his Nephew Don *Alfonso de Noronha*, with a few, but brave Men. The Sheikh received him with no great Number, though much Gallantry, maintaining his Ground, and threatening *de Cunna*, who, through a Shower of Bullets and Stones, made his Approach to the Fort, and was briskly repulsed by the Sheikh, whom then, Don *Alfonso* struck down with his Lance. Hence ensued a sharp Skirmish, the *Moors* endeavouring to carry off their Prince, and the *Portugueze* to hinder it. Till he and eight more being slain, the Enemy fled to the Castle, which was scaled, and those who entered, opening the Gate for the rest, a bloody Fight begun within, the *Moors* disputing it to the last Man. For out of eighty, there was but one left alive, besides a blind Man, who was found in a Well, and being asked, how he got there? answered, *That blind Men saw only one Thing, which is the Way to Liberty, and which even blind Men coveted*. He had his Liberty given him. The *Portugueze* lost six Men. The Natives, who had kept off, hearing of their Success, came to thank *de Cunna* for delivering them from the heavy Yoke of those *Mohammedans*, and were received under the Protection of the King of *Portugal*. Who having chosen Don *Alfonso de Noronha* to command the Fort, if taken, *de Cunna* gave it him, with a hundred Men for Garrison. *De Cunna* wintered in those Parts; after which, he sailed for *India*, and *Albuquerque* for the Coast of *Arabia*.

WHILE these Things delayed the Fleet, the King of *Kalekut* relying on the Success, promised by his Soothsayer, (as foretold by a great Earthquake, and Eclipse of the Sun which happened, so great, that the Stars appeared for a considerable Time) was arming against the *Portugueze*. But the Viceroy *Almeida*, sent out a Squadron of ten Ships, which the *Samorin* little expected, under

* This Remark is to be considered as the Superstition of the *Portugueze*, from which it seems, our Author *de Faria* (in other Matters a wise Man) is no freer than the rest. It will divert the Reader to hear what he writes on this Head, in another Place. In all Parts of *India*, says he, there are prodigious Witches. When *Vasco de Gama* was sailing upon that Discovery, some of them at *Kalekut* showed People, in Basins of Water, the three Ships he had with him. When Don *Francisco de Almeida*, the first Vice-Roy of *India*, was returning to *Portugal*, some Witches of *Kochin* told him, he should not pass the Cape of Good Hope; and there he was buried. [This is strained a little; for he did pass the Cape, and was buried at the Bay of *Sahimna*, some Leagues beyond, as will be seen hereafter.] What follows is still more extraordinary. At *Muskat*, there are such Sorcerers, that they eat the Inside of a Thing, only fixing their Eyes upon it. With their Sight they draw out the Entrails of any human Body, and so kill many People. One of these Fascinators, fixing his Eyes on a *Bateka*, or *Water-Melon*, sucked out the Inside: For being cut open to try the Experiment, it was found empty, and the Wizard, farther to satisfy the Spectators, vomited it up again. See *Portuguese Asia*, vol. 2 p. 510. 'Tis plain from hence, that a Person of the best Understanding, is capable of believing the worst of Nonsense, when once he gives up his Reason in any Thing.

Command

1508.

Almeida

Command of his Son Don Lorenzo; who failing a to *Dabul*, discovered the Fleet of *Kalekut*, and would have engaged it; But on Account of the Narrowness of the Place, it was carried in Council, not to attack them. For which, on his Return to *Kochin*, he was severely reprimanded by his Father, who broke all the Officers, and sent them to *Portugal*.

Barbours
Action of
Voz.

GONZALO PAZ, who followed Don Lorenzo, meeting a Ship of *Kananor*, with a *Portuguese* Pass, sunk it, and all the *Moors* flew up in a Sail, that they might never be seen. But his Villainy, for all this Caution, soon came to light, for one of the Bodies being found on Shore, and known to be the Nephew of *Mamala*, a rich Merchant of *Malabar*, the *Samorin* used it as an Argument to gain the King of *Kananor*, who before, wanted to break with the *Portuguese*. *Lorenzo de Brito*, Captain of the Fort there, on whom at first the Suspicion fell, was presently besieged by 20,000 *Moors*, when Assistance came from the Vice-Roy. But their Magazine of Provision taking Fire, they were forced to eat Vermin; and had been famished, but for abundance of Lobsters, which the Sea, being then rough, left behind, and was their only Relief. The *Samorin*, having sent a powerful Supply, the King of *Kananor* gave an Assault both by Sea and Land, with above 50,000 Men; who were repulsed with great Loss, and not one *Portuguese* killed. The King vexed at this, and terrified at the Coming of *de Cunna*, sued for Peace.

O. Afonso a
War.

Panani
taken with
great
Slaughter.

AFTER this, the Vice Roy went with *de Cunna* to fall upon *Panani*, a Town subject to *Kalekut*; where there were four Ships of the *Samorin*, commanded by *Kutuli*, a courageous *Moor*. They went up the River through Showers of Balls from the Shore, which is high; and the *Moors* ran into the Water to meet their Boats. But the *Portuguese* landing, attacked their Trenches, where a large *Moor*, wounding Don Lorenzo, he with one Stroke, clove his Head to his Breast. The Town being entered, all were put to the Sword: The Ships, and Plunder also, though of great Value, were burnt; and only the Artillery saved. In this Action, above five hundred of the Enemy perished, and but eighteen *Portuguese*, none of Note.

CHAP. X.

Continuation of the Exploits of the Portuguese.
under the Viceroyship of Almeida, from 1508
to 1510.

SECT. I.

Containing the Actions of Albuquerque in the Persian Gulf. Some Ports taken. Ormuz attacked.

ed The King becomes tributary, and breaks the Agreement. Albuquerque, by the Treachery of his Captains, returns unrevengeed.

1508.

Almeida

LET us now view some of the Exploits of the great Albuquerque, whose Name is still famous in the East Indies. After parting from *de Cunna*, the twentieth of August, 1508, as before related, he sailed for the Coast of Arabia in *Persia*, pursuant to the King's Order; having with him seven Sail, and four hundred and sixty fighting Men. He first touched at *Kalayat*, a beautiful strong Town in the Kingdom of *Ormuz*, but not so populous as heretofore; whose Buildings are after the Manner of Spain. The Governor, having offered Refreshments, and settled a Peace, went to *Kuriat*, ten Leagues further: Where, being ill received, he stormed the Town, and met with vigorous Opposition, but entered; killing eighty of the Enemy, with the Loss of only three Men.

Kuriat taken
and burned.

THE Place being plundered and burnt, with fourteen Vessels in the Harbour, he sailed eight Leagues farther to *Maskat*, a Place stronger than any of the others, and well provided with Men; who, hearing of the Destruction of *Kuriat*, resorted from all Parts to defend it. But the Governor, fearing the like Disaster, made Peace, and sent great Store of Provisions. When on a sudden, the Cannon of the Town began to play furiously upon the *Portuguese* Ships, which drew off hastily, not knowing the Cause of this Change, till some time after they understood, that 2000 Men, sent by the King of *Ormuz*, being arrived, their Officers refused to stand to the Treaty. But Albuquerque landing his Men at Break of Day, assaulted the Town so courageously, that as the *Portuguese* entered at one Gate, the *Moors* ran out of another. All the Houses were plundered, except the Governor's, who had given them Notice when the Relief came, though he was killed in the Confusion, not being known. This done, he passed to *Soar*, all the Inhabitants whereof fled, except the Governor, and some of the principal *Moor*s; who yielded it up to Albuquerque, and received it back to hold of King Manuel, under the same Tribute he had paid to the King of *Ormuz*. The Inhabitants of *Orfukam*, fifteen Leagues farther, having deserted it, the Town was plundered for the Space of three Days; and during this Time, he prepared to enter the Harbour of *Ormuz*, which was the principal End of the Voyage.

Maskat
reduced.

Soar surren-
dered, Or-
fukam
abandoned.

THE City *Ormuz* [or rather *Hormuz*] is seated in a little Island, called *Jerun*, at the Mouth of the Persian Gulf, about three Leagues in Compass; and so barren, that it produces nothing but Salt and Sulphur. The Buildings of the City are sumptuous: It is the great Market of all Goods, brought thither from the East, West, and North; which

Hormuz
described